让孩子不出国门开启"留学之旅"吧!

上人外语 编著



轻松休闲中"阅读"世界

揭开美国现行中小学课本的神秘面纱,与国外学生同步学习。



选材广泛、内容地道

阅读材料包括科学、文学、经济、社会等学科。 实现广泛阅读。



为中国学生量身定做

文章附有词汇注释、课后练习、译文。 适合不同程度的学习者。





🤲 中国信独出版社有限公司

国家一级出版社 全国百律图书出版单位。

跟美国学生一起学典语

上人外语 编著



图书在版编目(CIP)数据

跟美国学生一起学英语:高级版/上人外语编著. --北京:中国纺织出版社有限公司,2019.10

ISBN 978-7-5180-6255-3

I.①跟··· Ⅱ.①上··· Ⅲ.①英语—自学参考资料Ⅳ.① H31

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2019)第 101231号

责任编辑:郭 婷 责任校对:韩雪丽 责任印制:储志伟

中国纺织出版社有限公司出版发行

地址:北京市朝阳区百子湾东里A407号楼 邮政编码: 100124

销售电话: 010-67004422 传真: 010-87155801

 $http://www.c-textilep.\ com$

E-mail: faxing@c-textilep. com

中国纺织出版社天猫旗舰店

官方微博http://www.weibo.com/2119887771

三河市宏盛印务有限公司印刷 各地新华书店经销

2019年10月第1版第1次印刷

开本: 710×1000 1/16 印张: 16.5

字数: 250千字 定价: 68.00元

凡购本书, 如有缺页、倒页、脱页, 由本社图书营销中心调换

PREFACE 前言

英语学习一直以来在中国热度不减。然而读者们可以选择的英语读物大多拘泥于英语语言本身,往往忽略了语言背后所蕴含的文化元素。与此同时,大多数的英语读物都趋于选择经典的文学作品,而忽略了其他文体中语言的特色。本书正是致力于填补这几方面的空白。

本书涉及内容广泛,所有材料均选自美国现行中高等学校课本,包括公民、科学、文学、经济、社会和历史等多学科领域。就阅读材料本身而言,文学方面文章的选择比较偏重于语言本身,在阅读中,读者可以尽情地领略和体味英语语言的魅力。历史方面的文章则侧重于历史人物和事件,使读者在阅读的同时,更多地了解文章所传达的内容。科学和经济类的文章都非常有专业性,不仅为读者提供了大量的相关知识,更值得一提的是它们涵盖了大量的专业词汇。公民教育的文章与上述所有学科的文章都大不相同,除了作为阅读材料呈现之外,还侧重于对美国社会一些基本常识的介绍。社会学科则是在了解基本常识的基础上较为深入地挖掘了美国一些社会现象所产生的根源和发展趋势,为读者进一步详细了解美国社会提供了重要参考。

本书的每篇文章后都附有阅读所需的词汇和短语,并侧重于对大学英语四、六级词汇的讲解。在"词句荟萃"部分,所有短语的例句都经过精挑细选,通过学习,读者可以熟练地掌握相关短语的用法。此外,每篇文章后附带的课后练习也进一步加强了对文章中词汇和短语的巩固,同时还考查了读者对文章内容的理解程度。文章所对应的参考译文更是为读者全面了解文章内容提供了便利,同时对于有翻译兴趣的读者来说,参考译文也可以作为检验自己翻译质量的范本。

本书的另一亮点就是与每篇文章内容相关的扩展板块,这一板块致力于配合文章本身,扩充读者对相关话题的了解,尤其侧重于与现实生活的联系,期望读者在阅读之后能够更多地体会美国及西方社会的历史背景和人文文化,同时也帮助读者更为深刻地理解前面所阅读的文章。

由于本书涉及学科跨度很大,因此适合有不同兴趣的英语学习者选读,这也打破了普通英语读物多限于文科材料的束缚。学科的侧重点不同,文章的阅读难度对于不同的读者来说感受也不同。因此,本书适合各类读者阅读。

祝大家阅读快乐!

CONTENTS 目录

Part 1 American Civics 美国公民教育	
1. Becoming an American Citizen 如何成为美国公民····································	2
2. Making American Democracy Work 美国民主的运作	8
3. Public Policy 公共政策 ······	17
4. Kinds of Law 法律的种类······	23
5. Responsibili ties of Citizens 公民的责任和义务······	30
6. Women and Public Service 妇女和公共服务组织	38
Part 2 Economy 经济	
7. Bartering 以物易物···································	44
8. History of Money 钱币发展史·······	
9. Factors of Production 生产要素·······	56
10. Supply and Demand 供给与需求······	62
11. Economic Systems 经济体系·······	69
12. Gross Domestic Product 国内生产总值·······	75
13. Income Taxes 所得税······	81
14. Banking 银行业······	88
15. Credit Cards 信用卡······	94
16. Stock Market 股市······	100
Part 3 American History 美国历史	
17. Benjamin Franklin 本杰明・富兰克林····································	107

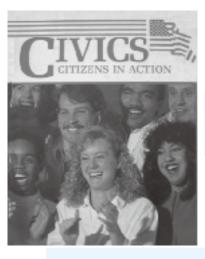
18. Charles William Eliot 查尔斯・威廉・爱略特····································	114
19. Developments in Agriculture 农业发展	122
20. Slums and Sweatshops 贫民窟和血汗工厂	128
21.The Age of Steam 蒸汽时代	135
22. The Ups and Downs of the 1930s and 1940s 20世纪三四十年代沉浮记·········	141
Part 4 American Literature 美国文学	
23. Journal of the First Voyage to America 第一次美洲航海日志····································	150
24. The Autobiography 富兰克林自传 ·······	158
25. Nature 自然······	166
26. Second Inaugural Address 第二次就职演说 ····································	172
27. The Mortgaged Heart 做了抵押的心······	179
28. Crossing the Great Divide 穿越大裂谷····································	188
29. The Earth on Turtle's Back 龟背上的土地 ····································	197
Port F. Society →	
Part 5 Society 社会	
30. Development of the English Language 英语的发展 ··································	
31. Is the American Dream Dying? 美国梦熄灭了吗? ······	217
32. Basic Values in the United States 美国人的基本价值观······	224
33. Choosing to Be Alcohol Free 远离酒精 ····································	231
34. Sports and Social Mobility 体育与社会流动······	238
35. Building Healthy Relationships 建立良好的人际关系······	245
36. Cultural Diversity 文化多样性······	252

Part 1 American Civics 美国公民教育

美国是一个非常重视公民教育的国家,无论是在理论研究还是实践探索上都一直走在世界的前列。早在18世纪末美利坚合众国成立之初,其教育就被赋予了培育公民的使命。1790年,美国出版了最早的关于美国历史、政府和公民教育的教科书,并在中小学开设了"公民科",从此公民教育在美国正式诞生。此后,美国的公民教育随着社会的变迁不断发展。20世纪,美国的公民教育发生了重大转折。1916年,全美教育协会(NEA)就公民教育的内容、方式、课程设置等向全国学校提出了建立"社会科"的建议报告,标志着美国现代公民教育的开始。从此,美国的公民教育即由注重政治教育转变为注重公民能力的培养和公民整体素质的提升。20世纪90年代以后,由于政府的高度重视,美国的公民教育进入了快速发展的时期,实现良好的公民教育成为美国在新世纪追求的主要教育目标之一。

"公民教育,应该是一项基本的事务。没有什么比培养一个有知识的、有能力的、负责任的公民更重要。思维习惯、坚持民主的倾向不是与生俱来的。民主政治不是靠自身来运转的机器,它需要一代接一代的人们用意识来维护和完善。"这是美国公民教育的基本主张。美国的公民教育深深扎根于美国的宪政思想,为"宪政式民主国家培养有能力并负责任的社会、政治参与者"始终是其坚持的目标。为了实现这一目标,美国的公民教育把对民主政治制度的研习作为基本且最为重要的内容。众所周知,美国民主政治制度的核心价值是自由、民主,受其影响的美国公民教育表现出浓厚的自由主义倾向,充分肯定个人的平等性、自主性、自由权利的优先性,承认价值多元。

这一章节将美国公民教育中的一些基本内容呈现给大家。



Becoming an American Citizen

如何成为美国公民

每个国家都有关于公民身份的法律和习俗。这样的法律描述了什么样的人是该国公民和其他人如何成 为该国公民。美国公民身份在美国宪法的第十四条修正案中有明确定义。

所有在美国出生或后来加入美国国籍并且受美国司法管辖的人,都是美国公民,同时也是他们所居住 州的公民。

Every nation has its own laws and customs concerning citizenship. Such laws describe who the country's citizens are and how others can become citizens. In the United States, American citizenship is defined in the Fourteenth Amendment¹ to the Constitution.

All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction² thereof³, are citizens of the United States, and of the state wherein they reside.

As the amendment indicates, there are two ways that a person can become a citizen of the United States—by birth or by naturalization⁴.

Citizens by Birth

Over 90 percent of today's American citizens became citizens at birth. They gained United States citizenship because of where they were born or to whom they were born.

The Law of the Soil

The most common way people become American citizens at birth is known as the law of the soil, or *jus soli*. Any person born on American soil, either in the United States or in one of its overseas territories, automatically becomes an American citizen. This is applicable even if the child's parents are not American citizens. For example, a child born in Michigan to parents who are Canadian citizens is an American citizen at birth because he or she was born on American soil.

The law of the soil also applies to children born in areas under American jurisdiction. This includes government workers and military personnel stationed⁵ in other countries. Also included

are American ships in foreign waters.

An exception to the law of the soil affects a small group of children born in the United States. These are children of foreign diplomats⁶ working in the United States. While here, the diplomats are representatives of other countries. For this reason, they are under the jurisdiction of their home governments. Although their children may be born on American soil, they are not American citizens at birth.

The Law of Blood

A second way a person can become a United States citizen at birth is by the law of blood, or *jus sanguinis*. Any person born outside the United States to parents who are American citizens automatically becomes an American citizen at birth. The only requirement is that one of the parents once lived in the United States. A child born in Paris to American parents who have moved to France, for example, is an American citizen at birth.

If only one of the child's parents is an American citizen, the law of blood still applies. But the rules are slightly different. In most cases, though, the child becomes an American citizen at birth as long as the American parent has lived in the United States for a certain length of time.

Citizens by Naturalization

Not all Americans, of course, become United States citizens at birth. Many come to the United States as citizens of other countries. Those who wish to stay here permanently⁷ are known as immigrants. Many of the immigrants become American citizens. The process by which this happens is called naturalization.

To become a naturalized citizen, immigrants must meet certain qualifications. They must be at least 18 years



old. They must have entered the United States legally. They must have lived in the United States for at least five years, including six months in the state in which they are to be naturalized. They must show that they can read, write, and speak simple English. They must show an understanding of the principles of American government. And, they must be of "good moral character".



🥇 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1. amendment** [əˈmendmənt] *n*. 改正, 修正; 改善; 修正草案, 修正建议
- 2. jurisdiction [ˌdʒʊərɪsˈdɪk[ən] n. 司法权; 裁判权; 管辖权
- 3. thereof [ðeərˈɒv, -ˈɒf] adv. 在其中, 关于
- 4. naturalize ['næt[ərəlaɪz] v. 使加入国籍, 移植
- 5. station ['ster[ən] vt. 驻扎,安置 n. 车站;驻地
- 6. diplomat ['dɪpləmæt] n. 外交官,有外交手腕的人,有权谋的人
- 7. permanently ['p3:məntlɪ] adv. 永存地,不变地,永久地



Expression 词句荟萃

- ^二 1. subject to 受……支配;服从于
 - e.g. All nuclear installations are subject to international safeguards.
 - 一切核设施均须执行国际防护措施。

All the holidays on offer are subject to availability.

现行所有的节假日只有在情况允许时才可放假。

- 2. apply to 有关; 涉及; 使用; 应用
 - e.g. What I am saying applies only to some of you.

我所说的只涉及你们中的一些人。

The new technology was applied to farming.

这项新技术已应用于农业。

- 3. as/so long as 只要;由于;既然;就……来说
 - e.g. We'll go as long as the weather is good.

只要天气好我们就去。

So long as there is a demand for these drugs, the financial incentive for drug dealers will be there.

只要毒品有需求,贩毒者的经济诱因就存在。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.			
1. Every nation has its own laws and customs citizenship.		citizenship.	
A. concerning			
2. Any person born on America	. Any person born on American soil becomes an American citizen.		
A. immediately	B. automatically C. spontaneously		
3. This includes government wo	orkers and military personnel in other countries.		
A. stated	B. stationed C. stayed		
4. Those who wish to stay here	ar	e known as immigrants.	
A. permanently	B. persistently	C. perceivably	
5. If only one of the child's pare	ents is an American citiz	en, the law of blood still	
A. avails	B. affects	C. applies	
States. These are children here, the diplomats are 4 of the state	of foreign 3of other countri	group of children born in the United working in the United States. While es. For this reason, they are under the .6 their children may be citizens 8	
III. Write true (T) or fals	se (F).		
1 Over 80 percent of too	day's American citizens	became citizens at birth.	
2 To become a naturalized citizen, immigrants must meet certain qualifications.			
3 Not all Americans become United States citizens at birth.			
4 A child born in Paris to American parents who have moved to France is not an			
American citizen at birth.			
5 Immigrants must show	w an understanding of th	e principles of American government.	

参考译文

每个国家都有关于公民身份的法律和习俗。 这样的法律描述了什么样的人是该国公民和其他 人如何成为该国公民。美国公民身份在美国宪法 的第十四条修正案中有明确定义。

所有在美国出生或后来加入美国国籍并且受 美国司法管辖的人,都是美国公民,同时也是他 们所居住州的公民。

正如修正案里定义的那样,成为美国公民有两种方式——出生与血统或后来加入美国国籍。

出生和血统

90% 以上的美国公民都是因为出生在美国而成为美国公民的。他们因为出生地或他们父母的公民身份而获得美国公民身份。

出生地国籍法 成为美国公民最常用的方式 称为出生地国籍法。所有出生在美国国土的人,无论是美国国内或它的海外领土之一,都自动成 为美国公民。即使孩子的父母不是美国公民,这一规定也适用。比如,一个孩子在密歇根出生,而其父母是加拿大公民。这个孩子一出生就成为 美国公民,因为他/她出生在美国国土上。

出生地国籍法还适用于出生在美国司法管辖 区域内的孩子们。这包括常驻其他国家的政府官 员和军事人员,也包括在外国海域的美国船只。

出生地国籍法不适用于在美国出生的一小部 分孩子。他们是在美国工作的外国外交官的孩子。 在这种情况下,外交官是其他国家的代表。正是 由于这个原因,他们受他们自己国家的司法管辖。 虽然他们的孩子可能生在美国国土,但他们不能 由于出生而成为美国公民。 血统国籍法 因出生成为美国公民的第二种方法是血统国籍法。所有的孩子,如果是在美国之外的国家出生,但父母都是美国公民,其自动成为美国公民。唯一的要求是其父母中任意一个曾经在美国居住过。例如,一对美国夫妇移居法国,他们的孩子出生在巴黎,这个孩子仍然是美国公民。

如果孩子的父母只有一方是美国公民,血统 国籍法仍然适用。但具体的规定稍有区别。然而 在大多数情形下,只要父母中是美国公民的那一 方在美国居住过一定的时间,孩子出生就成为美 国公民。

加入美国国籍

当然,并不是所有的美国人都是一出生就成为美国公民的。很多人都是以其他国家公民的身份来到美国。那些希望长期留下的人就是移民。很多移民变成美国公民。这个过程叫作加入美国国籍。

要想加入美国国籍,移民必须符合一定的条件。他的年龄必须在 18 岁及以上;必须是合法进入美国;必须已经在美国居住至少 5 年,其中包括在他们将要加入的州居住 6 个月;必须证明自己能阅读、书写、说简单的英语;必须证明自己了解美国政府的法规。而且,他们必须具有"良好的品质"。

"美"事一桩

ر ر

美国移民

美利坚民族是一个多样性的民族。美国接受的移民比其他任何国家都多,总共有 5000 多万人,而且现在每年仍接纳近 70 万移民。

土著美洲人

两万多年以前就有了最初的美洲移民,他们都是些跨越大陆、四处漫游的人:跨过今天白令海峡所在的陆桥,从亚洲跟踪兽群来到美洲的猎人及其家人。当克里斯托弗·哥伦布在1492年发现新大陆时,误以为他登陆的地方——巴哈马群岛中的圣萨尔瓦多岛是印度,便将土著美洲人称为"印第安人"。

欧洲移民

在美国的早期移民中,英国人是居主导地位的种族群体,虽然也有移民来自其他欧洲国家,包括西班牙、葡萄牙、法国、荷兰、德国和瑞典,但在1780年,每四个美国人中就有三个是英国或爱尔兰血统。

在 1840 至 1860 年间,美国迎来了第一个大的移民浪潮。在整个欧洲,由于饥饿、歉收、人口增长和政治动乱,每年约有 500 万人离开家园。在爱尔兰,一场枯萎病使马铃薯颗粒无收,75 万人饿死街头,许多幸存者移居国外。仅在 1847 年这一年,从爱尔兰移民到美国的人数就达 11,812。今天,美籍爱尔兰人约有 3,900 万。

1848—1849 年德意志邦联革命的失败,使许多德国人移居国外。美国南北战争(1861—1865 年)期间,联邦政府为招兵买马而鼓励从欧洲,尤其是从德国各州移民。今天,有 22%的美国人其祖先是德国人。

犹太人是在 1880 年左右开始大量来到美国的。在 10 年中, 他们在东欧遭到残酷迫害。在其后的 45 年中有 200 万犹太人移居美国。

非自愿的移民

在汹涌来到北美的移民中,有一个群体是非主动的,就是非洲人。他们当中,有 50 万人是在 1619—1808 年间被作为奴隶贩运来的。当时,向美国输入奴隶已属非法。然而,拥有奴隶及其后代 的做法仍在继续,尤其是在以农业为主的南方,那里需要大量的劳动力耕田种地。今天,美籍非洲人 占美国总人口的 12.7%。

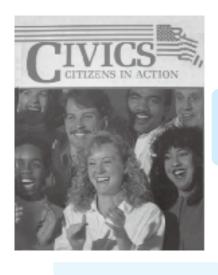
非法移民

美国移民规划局估计,现在有大量没有得到许可的人生活在美国,而且非法移民的数量还在继续 增长。土生土长的美国人和合法移民对非法移民问题感到担忧。

-Answer

- I. 1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. C
- II. 1. exception 2. affects 3. diplomats 4. representatives5. jurisdiction 6. Although 7. soil 8. at birth
- III. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T





2

Making American Democracy Work

美国民主的运作

美国人是民主政体的公民。这是由历史和现实形成的。但是,要想使美国民主一天天地运作起来,不 光要知道谁是美国公民,还需要公民有意愿参与到政府工作中来。

Americans are citizens of a democracy¹. They have been shaped by their past and by the modern age in which they live. But, something more than knowing who American citizens are is needed to make American democracy work from day to day. It takes citizens' willing to become involved in government. But, being involved in government is not always easy. American citizens need knowledge and skills to do their jobs effectively².

Acquiring³ and Using Information

Today's citizens need to know how to answer important questions. They need to know how to find facts in books, magazines, and reference⁴ works, from radio and television reports, and from other sources. They need to know how to learn information from telephone inquiries⁵, interviews, and by letter.

One of the first skills needed for effective citizenship⁶, then, is the ability to gather and use information. Being informed is the first step toward making a sensible⁷ decision. Only after making a decision based on the facts can citizens take actions to meet their goals.

Consider this example. Imagine that you live on a very busy street. You have heard that the city government is considering installing a new traffic light on the street. Your neighbors seem divided on the issue. Several favor the idea, believing it will bring added safety. Others are against it. Some fear it would raise taxes. Others think it might slow down traffic.

Before you can make a decision about the new traffic light, you need to gather information. You need to ask questions like: where would the traffic light be placed? Have any accidents occurred there in the last year?

To answer the first question, you might contact a member of city government. This contact could be made by telephone, by letter, or in person. To answer the second question, you could look in the newspapers at the library and see how many accidents have been reported. You could also contact the local police department or city traffic division.

After you have gathered information, you need to use it, or to present it in a way that is easily understood. Perhaps you could write a report of your findings. Or, you might draw a graph⁸ comparing traffic on your street with traffic on another busy street in town.

Assessing⁹ Involvement

Many issues affect citizens in today's world—so many, in fact, that every person cannot become involved in them all. Instead, Americans must decide which issues to become involved in and which issues to pass by. To do this, citizens need to assess their involvement in each issue, or decide how important an issue is to them.

To decide how involved you should be in an issue, you need to know two things. First, in what ways could the situation affect you and others? Second, how could your own actions affect the outcome of the situation?

Think again about the traffic light example. How are you involved? Do you regularly cross the street? If not, is it important to other people that the traffic light be installed? Knowing your own needs and being aware of the needs of others are important to the mastery of this skill.

Making Decisions

A third vital citizenship skill is making thoughtful decisions about government matters. Citizens need to recognize that there can be more than one solution to any problem. They need to be able to identify alternatives¹⁰ and decide which will be the most effective for themselves and others. To do this, citizens need to know what goals or values are involved in each alternative, and what the consequences of a certain choice will be.

In the debate about the traffic light, you need to make some important decisions. Before deciding for or against a new light, you need to think about other alternatives. You might consider whether a flashing yellow light would serve the same purpose. Perhaps a crosswalk would be enough. What are the consequences of choosing one of these alternatives? Are they better choices than installing a traffic light? When you have given all the alternatives careful consideration, you

will be better able to make a good decision.

Making Judgments

A fourth skill for effective citizenship is the ability to make sound judgments. To judge someone or something is to determine its worth in terms of a certain standard.

In the case of the traffic light, a standard you might use to judge the situation could be safety. Are people really in danger when they cross the street? Another standard you might use to determine your judgment might be practicality¹¹. How much will a new traffic light cost? The standards you use will shape the judgment you make about the project.

Communicating

A fifth skill necessary for effective citizenship is the ability to communicate. There are many ways to get ideas and viewpoints across to others. An effective citizen needs to have skills in both speaking and writing. Such a citizen should feel comfortable addressing the public as well as talking with a friend.

When you have made your decision for or against a new traffic light, for example, it is time to tell other people how you feel. You could go to a government meeting and speak to the leaders there. Or, you might write them a letter listing the reasons for your decision.

Cooperating

A sixth skill is the ability to cooperate. To achieve goals, citizens need to work together. Cooperation includes being able to be a leader or a follower, depending on the situation. It means coping with conflict in a group and working with people who are different from yourself.

Before a decision about the traffic light has been made, it probably would be a good idea to find out what your neighbors think of the problem. You might decide to have a meeting. In the meeting, each person would be allowed to speak. Cooperation means listening to other people, even if their views disagree with your own views. Cooperation also means accepting the final decision of the majority of the group.

Promoting Interests

A seventh citizenship skill is the ability to recognize and promote your own interests. What is

most important to you in a given situation? How can you work to carry out your goals?

Think again about the traffic light question. In this case, one thing important to you, and to many others, is safety. To promote your interests—safety—you may decide to join together to work in favor of the light.



🥇 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. democracy [dɪˈmɒkrəsɪ] n. 民主政治,民主主义
- 2. effective [r'fektrv] adj. 有效的,给人深刻印象的,有力的
- 3. acquire [əˈkwaɪə] vt. 获得, 学到
- **4. reference** ['refrəns] *n.* 提及,涉及,参考,参考书目,证明书(人),介绍信(人)
- 5. inquiry [ɪnˈkwaɪərɪ] n. 质询,调查
- **6. citizenship** ['sɪtɪzən[ɪp] *n*. 公民的身份,公民的职责和权利
- 7. sensible ['sensəbl] adj. 有感觉的, 明智的, 有判断力的
- **8.** graph [gro:f] n. 图表, 曲线图
- 9. assess [ə'ses] vt. 估定,评定
- **10.** alternative [oːlˈtɜːnətɪv] n. 二中择一,可供选择的办法、事物等 adj. 选择性的,二中择一的
- 11. practicality [ˌpræktɪˈkælətɪ] n. 实用性



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. base sth. on/upon sth. 以……为基础(根据)
 - e.g. What are you basing this theory on?

你这种理论的根据是什么?

The movie is based on a real-life incident.

这部电影以现实生活中的一件事为基础。

- 2. take action 采取行动,提出诉讼
 - e.g. Firefighters took action immediately to stop the blaze spreading.

消防队员立即采取了行动防止大火蔓延。

He is considering taking legal action against the hospital.

他正考虑起诉这家医院。

3. compare...with 比较,对比

e.g. We carefully compared the first report with the second.

我们仔细比较了第一份报告和第二份报告。

My own problems seem insignificant compared with other people's.

与别人的问题相比,我自己的问题算不得什么。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct	ct letter in the blank.	
1. Today's citizens need to know how to find facts in books, magazines, and works.		
A. reference	B. preference	C. transference
2. Citizens need to kno	w how to learn information	from telephone, interviews, and
by letter.		
A. enquiries	B. inquiries	C. acquisitions
3. Being informed is th	e first step toward making a	a decision.
A. sensible	B. sensitive	C. sentimental
4. One of the first skill	ls needed for	_ citizenship is the ability to gather and use
information.		,
A. positive	B. efficient	C. effective
5. Only after making a	decision on the	e facts can citizens take actions to meet their
goals.		
A. based	B. biased	C. bashed
6. You could look in t	he newspapers at the libra	ary and see how many have been
reported.		
A. incidents	B. accidents	C. improvements

		\sim	_
7. You may decide to	join together to work		the light.
A. in terms of	B. in favor of	C. in case of	
8. Another standard y	ou might use to determine	e your judgment mi	ght be
A. punctuality	B. practicability	C. practicality	
9. Americans must de	ecide which issues to beco	me ii	n and which issues to pass by.
A. involved	B. interested	C. indicated	
10	means listening to oth	ner people, even if	heir views disagree with your
own views.			
A. Coordination	B. Corporation	C. Cooperation	
II. Complete thes	se sentences.		
1. You might draw a	graph tr	affic on your stree	t traffic on another
busy street in town			
2. Your neighbors see	em on the iss	ue. Several	the idea, believing it will
bring added safety.			
3. Being	is the first step toward	d making a sensible	decision.
4. Only after making	a decision based on the f	acts can citizens	to meet
their goals.			
5. After you have ga	thered information, you	need to	it in a way that is easily
understood.	·		
III. Write true (7	f) or false (F).		
1 Citizens nee	ed to recognize that there of	can be more than or	e solution to any problem.
2 Many issues	s affect citizens in today's	world, but we need	become involved in them all.
3 Before a de	ecision about the traffic l	ight has been made	e, it probably would not be a
good idea to find ou	it what your neighbors this	nk of the problem.	

参考译文

美国人是民主政体的公民。这是由历史和现实形成的。但是,要想使美国民主一天天地运作起来,不光要知道谁是美国公民,还需要公民有意愿参与到政府工作中来。但是,参与到政府的工作中并不是一件易事。美国公民需要知识和技能才能有效地做这个工作。

获取和使用信息

当今的公民需要知道如何对重要的问题做出 回答。他们需要学会在书本、杂志和文献作品中 获取知识,从广播、电视报道或其他渠道了解现 实。他们还需要学会通过电话调查、采访和信件 等形式获取信息。

因此,有效行使公民身份的第一项技能就是 收集和使用信息的能力。了解信息是做出明智决 定的第一步。只有在基于事实的基础上做出决定, 公民才能采取行动来实现他们的目标。

看一下这个例子。假设你住在一条非常繁忙的街道,你听说市政府正考虑在这条街上安装一个新的交通信号灯。你的邻居们似乎意见不一。一些人支持这个观点,相信它会更安全;另一些人反对,担心会使纳税额提升;有的则认为它会减慢交通。

在你对这个新的交通信号灯做出决定前,你 首先需要收集信息。你要问一些诸如此类的问题: 这个红绿灯要放在哪里?去年那里是否发生过交 通事故?

要回答第一个问题,你可能要联系政府部门的相关人员,可以通过打电话、写信或面对面的方

式。要回答第二个问题,你可以到图书馆翻阅报纸, 看看有多少起已报道的交通事故。你也可以联系 当地的警察部门或城市交通管理部门。

在你收集信息后,你需要使用它,或者用一种易懂的方式把它呈现出来。也许你可以写一篇调查报告。或者,你可以制作一张图来对比你居住地街道的交通状况和城里另一条繁忙街道的交通状况。

参与度评定

在当今的世界,影响公民的事情有很多。正 因为有太多的事情,所以不可能面面俱到。因此, 美国人需要决定参与到什么样的事情中以及放弃 什么样的事情。公民需要对自己的参与度做出评 定,也就是说,要认清每件事对自己的重要程度。

决定自己的参与度,你要明确两件事。第一, 这件事对你和他人的影响如何?第二,你的行为 会对事情的结果产生什么样的影响?

再想想交通信号灯的那个例子。你是怎样参与的?你经常过马路吗?如果不是,安装信号灯对其他人重要吗?知道自己和他人的需求是掌握这一技能的关键。

做出决定

第三个重要的公民技能是对政府行为做出考虑周全的决定。公民们应该认识到每个问题都有不止一种解决方式。他们需要有能力甄别各种可能性,并且决定哪一个是对自己和他人最有效的。公民们需要知道每种可能性的目的和价值,还有每个选择所带来的后果是什么。

在关于交通信号灯的辩论中,你需要做些重要的决定。在决定支持还是反对之前,你需要考

虑其他的可能性。你可能会考虑安装一个闪烁的 黄色信号灯是否会达到同样的效果。也许一个过 街天桥就足够了。那么选择其他可能性的后果是 什么呢?它们比安装新的信号灯更好吗?当你对 每个可能性都给予充分考虑后,你将更加有可能 做出正确的决定。

做出判断

第四个有效的公民技能是做出正确判断的能力。判断人或事意味着根据一定的标准决定它的价值。

对于信号灯这件事,你能用来作为判断的标准可以是安全。人们在过马路时真的危险吗?另一个评价标准可以是实用性。一个新的信号灯要花多少钱?你采用的标准将会帮你形成你的判断。

交流

第五个有效的公民技能是交流能力。有很多 方法可以把自己的想法和观点传递给他人。一位 有效参与的公民需要同时具有说和写的能力。这 样的公民无论是在公众作演说的时候还是与朋友 谈心的时候,都应该感觉很自然。

例如,当你已经决定支持或反对新信号灯 是安全。为了扩大你们的共同利益——安全以后,是时候把你的感觉告诉其他人了。你可以 们可能决定联合起来支持安装那个信号灯。

去参加政府听证会,把你的想法告诉领导者。或者,你可以写信给他们,把你想到的原因都列举 出来。

合作

第六个技能就是合作。为了达成目标,公民 们需要合作。合作包括根据不同情况,成为领导 者或成为跟随者。这意味着在一个群体中化解争 端,并与和你不同的人一起工作。

在关于新信号灯的决定做出之前,可能更需要了解你的邻居们对这个问题的看法。你可以决定召开一个会议。在会上,每个人都可以发言。合作意味着倾听别人的看法,即使他们的看法和你的看法不一致。合作也意味着最终接受大多数人的决定。

扩大自身利益

第七个技能就是认可和扩大你自身的利益。 在既定的情形下,对你来说最重要的是什么?你 怎么样能实现你自己的目标?

再想想交通信号灯的问题。在这种情况下,对于你和其他很多人来说有一件事很重要,那就是安全。为了扩大你们的共同利益——安全,你们可能决定联合起来支持安装那个信号灯。

-Answer

- I. 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. C
- II. 1. comparing...with 2. divided; favor 3. informed
 - 4. take actions 5. present
- III. 1. T 2. F 3. F



"美"事一桩



美国市民社会

美国的市民社会可以说是联谊会、俱乐部、教会、商务联合会和其他自愿组织的舞台。市民社会作为"自然关爱和社会交往的领域",主要是解决私人与公共、个人与社会、公共伦理与个人利益、个人激情与公共关注、个人主义和利他主义、个人存在和社会存在之间的问题与矛盾。这些社会关系,在介于国家与个人之间的领域起着缓冲与调解的作用,给公民以实践民主的可能——如自由集会和非强制性的对话。从这个意义上说,市民社会起到调和个人利益与公共利益的作用。

美国的市民社会有着这样的特点:

- (1) 拥有众多广泛的、自愿的结社组织;
- (2) 教会与国家分离;
- (3)奉行联邦主义(而不是欧洲的国家主义);
- (4) 将个人自由视为一种价值, 执着地加以保护:
- (5) 文明德行资源丰富。

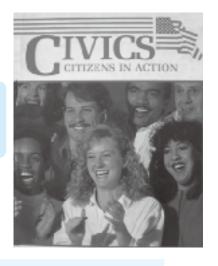
美国市民遵循着这样的意识形态原则:

- (1) 接受美国价值和信念的原则,但不接受将个人包括在政体里的原始评判标准的存在;
- (2) 强调个人自主是社会团结原则的核心;
- (3) 个人高度积极地参与社会和政治秩序,也就是说,作为国家的社团,所有成员都参与公共生活。

美国市民社会的形成是美国民主的前提,同时,它的发展又是巩固美国民主和民主治理的必要条件。法国著名政治学家托克维尔在 19 世纪就注意到美国民主与市民社会的关系,认为美国社会独特的市民性是其社会现代化的主要内容之一。托克维尔注意到,美国社会中存在市民自愿的结社组织,他认为美国人的这种能力是民主在美国得以实行的关键。他说:"各种年龄、社会地位和脾性的美国人总是在建立各种结社组织。这些组织不仅仅是商业和工业性的,人们都参加这样的组织,还有其他数千种组织,宗教的、道德的、严肃的、无关紧要的、非常庞大的和非常小型的组织……我认为,在美国,没有任何东西比这些知识性的和道德的结社组织更值得我注意。"托克维尔特别赞赏美国的小镇政府和教会。他认为这些组织将美国人纯粹关心个人私有的利益引导到公共事业中,在公共事业中他们培养了心灵的习性,而心灵的习性有利于民主妥协和对公共利益的关注。

Public Policy

3



公共政策

由于他们所提供的服务,地方政府的单位——郡、城市、镇和特殊区域——影响着美国人每天的生活。要想了解地方政府的日常工作,就需要了解他们的政策制定。

Because of the services they provide, local units of government—counties, cities, towns, and special districts—affect the lives of Americans every day. To understand the daily workings of local governments, it is important to understand local policymaking. Most local decisions are based on public policies. And, public policies affect many people as well as many areas of life. Among the most important policy areas for local governments are policies for public assistance, safety, education, the environment, and growth.

Policies for Public Assistance

In your local area, as in local areas around the world, there are people who need help. These people may be out of work, homeless, or unable to afford medical care for themselves or their families. In the United States, many of these people receive some form of public assistance, or help, as a matter of public policy.

Although many such programs are run by the national government and the states, local governments also take part in helping the people of their communities.

Policies for Safety

Local governments have many public policies to protect the safety of their citizens. The establishment of a police force is an example of a public policy to support the goal of safety. So is a fire department or a local ambulance service. Local building inspections¹, fire codes, and speed limits are other examples. Many local governments add fluoride² to local water supplies. Fluoride has been found to help prevent tooth decay³. This, too, is the result of a policy meant to protect the public.

Policies for Education

Public policies dealing with education

often start at the state of national level of government. In these cases, the local level is responsible only for carrying out such policies. Some education policies, however, are started at the local level. A policy set by the Dade County, Florida, school system is one example of this.

Policies for the Environment

Your environment is the area around you. Local governments have many public policies to deal with problems that affect the environment. Many of these local policies deal with pollution.

An example of a local environmental policy is zoning⁴. Zoning is a way of dividing a city into areas, or zones. By passing zoning laws, a local government is deciding how the land and buildings in each zone can be used. Once an area is divided into zones, the buildings in each zone must meet certain standards. In a residential zone, for example, zoning laws

might restrict the height of houses and the size of yards. A zoning law could prevent a factory or a skyscraper from being built in the middle of a residential⁵ neighborhood. All of this helps local governments protect their environment.

Policies for Growth

Many local governments today welcome new businesses, new housing developments, or construction improvements. Such growth usually means more jobs for the people of the area. It also means that more money will be spent around town in stores, restaurants, and other businesses.

To promote growth, many local governments set policies meant to attract new businesses. Some cities, for example, offer large tax cuts to businesses that locate there. Others help businesses find office sites. Many areas even help workers moving from out of town to find new homes and get settled.



く Vocabulary 新鮮酷词

- 1. inspection [ɪnˈspekʃən] n. 检查, 视察
- 2. fluoride ['fluəraɪd] n. 氟化物
- 3. decay [dɪˈkeɪ] vi./n. 腐朽,腐烂,衰减,衰退
- 4. zoning [ˈzəʊnɪŋ] n. 分区制
- **5. residential** [,rezɪ'den∫əl] *adj*. 住宅的,与居住有关的



Expression 词句荟萃

1. a matter of sth./of doing sth. 关于……的问题

e.g. Planning a project is just a matter of working out the right order to do things in .

规划一个项目就是要设计出正确的工作顺序。

Learning to drive is all a matter of coordination.

学开车主要是靠协调。

2. prevent from 阻止; 阻碍; 阻挠

e.g. He is prevented by law from holding a licence.

法律不允许他持有执照。

Nothing would prevent him from speaking out against injustice.

什么都不能阻止他鸣不平。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct	ct letter in the blank.	
1. Most local decisions	are on publi	c policies.
A. bounded	B. stationed	C. based
2. These people may b	e	, homeless, or unable to afford medical
care for themselves	or their families.	
A. out of work	B. out of problem	C. out of question
3. Fluoride has been fo	ound to help prevent tooth _	
A. decay	B. delay	C. deploy
4. In a	zone, for example, zo	ning laws might restrict the height of houses
and the size of yards.		
A. presidential	B. residential	C. incidental

5. Some cities, for example	e, offer large tax _	to businesses that locate there.
A. cuts	B. cults	C. nuts
II. Write true (T) or	false (F).	
1 The establishmen	nt of a police force	e is an example of a public policy to support the
goal of safety.		
2 Public policies	dealing with edu	cation often start at the state of local level of
government.		/
3 Zoning is a way of	of dividing a city in	nto areas, or zones.
4 Many local gover	rnments today weld	come new businesses, new housing developments,
or construction improve	ments.	
5 To promote gro	wth, many local	governments set policies meant to attract new
businesses.		
III. Complete these s	entences.	
1. To understand the daily	workings of local	governments, it is important to understand local
·		
_		s for local governments are policies for public
		environment, and growth.
3. Many local government	s add	to local water supplies.
4. By passing	laws, a local go	overnment is deciding how the land and buildings
in each zone can be used	d.	
5. Many areas even help	workers moving fi	rom to find new
homes and get settled.		
~	~ ~	

Answers

- I. 1. C 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. A
- II. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T
- III. 1. policymaking 2. assistance 3. fluoride 4. zoning 5. out of town



参考译文

由于他们所提供的服务,地方政府的单位——郡、城市、镇和特殊区域,影响着美国人每天的生活。要想了解地方政府的日常工作,就需要了解他们的政策制定。大多数的地方决策都是基于公共政策的。公共政策不仅影响着很多人,而且也影响着他们生活的方方面面。地方政府最重要的政策领域包括官方援助、公共安全、公共教育、公共环境和公共发展。

官方援助政策

在你的周围,就像世界上任何一个地方一样,会有需要帮助的人们。这些人可能没有工作,无家可归,或者无法承担自己或家人的医疗费用。在美国,根据政府政策,很多这样的人能收到来自官方的某种形式的援助或帮助。虽然这样的项目通常是由国家或州政府运行的,但地方政府也参与帮助他们社区里需要帮助的人们。

安全政策

地方政府有很多保护公民安全的公共政策。 警察队伍的建立就是支持安全目标的公共政策的 例子。消防部门和地方急救服务部门的建立也一 样。其他的例子还包括地方建筑物检查、消防规 范和行车限速。很多地方政府都在当地自来水中 加入氟化物。氟被证明可以防止蛀牙。这也是保 护公众的政策体现。

教育政策

有关教育的公共政策通常是基于国家级的相 ...

关政策。在这样的情况下,地方一级的政府只是 负责执行上述的政策。然而,也有一部分教育政 策是始于地方一级的。佛罗里达州戴德郡制定的 学校系统的政策就是其中一个例子。

环境政策

你的环境是你周围的区域。地方政府有很多 公共政策来应对影响环境的问题。很多地方政策 都是治理污染的。

地方环境政策的一个例子就是分区制。分 区制是一种把城市分为区域或地域的方法。根 据核准的分区法,由地方政府来决定每个区域 内的土地和建筑物的用途。一旦一个地方被分 成区,每个区的建筑都要符合一定的标准。例如, 在居民区内,分区法可能会限制房屋的高度和 院子的面积。分区法也可以防止将工厂或摩天 大楼建在居民区的中间。所有的一切都帮助地 方政府保护环境。

发展政策

当今很多地方政府都欢迎新的企业、新的房屋 开发项目或建筑改善项目。这样的发展通常会意味 着区域内就业机会的增加。同时也意味着人们会在 周边的商店、饭店和其他生意中花更多的钱。

为了促进发展,很多地方政府制定政策来吸引新的商机。例如,一些城市为落户当地的企业提供大额的减税政策。有的帮助企业寻找合适的办公地点。很多地方甚至帮助员工从外地迁入,安家落户。

"美"事一桩

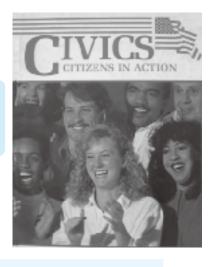
\bigcirc

公共政策过程

- 一般认为,公共政策过程主要包括政策制定、政策执行、政策评估、政策终结、政策监督五个方面。
- (1) 政策制定。政策制定又称为政策形成或政策规划,是公共政策过程的第一阶段。政策过程包括政策问题界定、构建政策议程、政策方案规划、政策合法化等阶段。①政策问题的界定,主要包括思考问题、勾勒问题边界、寻求事实依据、列举目的和目标、明确政策范围、显示潜在损益、重新审视问题表述七个方面;②构建政策议程,主要途径有:政治领导人、公共组织(包括立法机构、司法机构、行政机构和其他履行公共管理职能的组织)、利益集团、大众传媒、公众突发事件、技术创新和变革、政治运动、原有的政策、专家学者、社会公众十个途径;③政策方案规划,主要指决策者为处理政策问题制定相应的解决方法、对策和措施的过程,具体涉及确定目标、拟定方案、预测方案后果、抉择方案的目的;④政策合法化,主要包括法制工作机构的审查、领导决策会议的讨论决定、行政首长签署发布政策,其过程主要包括提出政策议案、审议政策议案、表决和通过政策议案、公布政策。
- (2) 政策执行。政策执行是指在政策制定完之后,将政策由理论变为现实的过程。其形成过程 主要包括以下六点:①设置政策执行机构;②政策执行资源配置;③政策宣传;④政策分解;⑤政 策试验;⑥政策实施。影响政策执行的因素主要包括政策问题的特性、政策本身的因素、政策之外 因素三方面。政策执行手段包括政治手段、法律手段、经济手段等,使用时应多样化、交叉化,结 合实际情况运用相应手段。
- (3) 政策评估。政策评估是公共政策运行的重要阶段,加强公共政策评估,对于检验公共政策效果、决定公共政策的存废具有十分重要的意义。通常,政策评估是指依据一定的标准、程序和方法,对公共政策的效率、效益和价值进行测量、评价的过程,其主旨在于获取公共政策实行的相关信息,以作为决定政策维持、调整、终结、创新的依据。
- (4) 政策终结。政策终结是指公共决策者通过慎重的政策评估之后,采取必要措施,终止那些过时、多余、无效或失败的公共政策的过程。
- (5)政策监督。政策监督是公共政策过程的重要组成部分,它是提高公共政策运行质量和效益的有力保证,是指监督主体依照法定的权限和程序对公共政策运行过程进行监察和督促,以衡量并纠正公共政策偏差,实现公共政策目标。政策监督具备主体广泛性、客体特定性、法制性三个特点。

Kinds of Law





法律的种类

虽然每个人都认同美国有很多法律,但是大多数人都没有注意到法律的不同种类。研究这些法律的一个途径是把它们归纳为两大类别——公法和私法。两大类别同时又都可以细分为不同特殊种类的法律。

Although everyone agrees that the United States has many laws, most people are not aware of its different kinds of laws. There are laws against driving too fast, against making noise near a hospital, against setting fire to a building, and against robbing a store. There are laws that assure the quality of food, laws that promote highway safety, and laws that require records to be kept of births and deaths.

One way to study these laws is to group them into two categories¹—public law and private law. Both groupings are broken down into specific² kinds of laws. As you read about the specific groups, keep in mind that they sometimes overlap³. Also, be careful not to confuse these two groups of laws with the way the courts will handle a dispute over a certain law should such a conflict arise.

Public Law

The first broad classification of law is public law. Public law is the set of laws that directly affects the government. Conflicts addressed by public law can be between the government and a person accused⁴ of a crime, for example. Such conflicts can also be between two levels of government, or between our government and the government of another country.

Constitutional Law. Constitutional Law is the set of laws found in a constitution⁵. The laws in the Constitution of the United States are the highest laws in the land. Laws in state constitutions also are a part of constitutional law. Constitutions are intended to give stability to government so

that rules and forms of government may not be changed quickly during brief political, social, or economic upheavals⁶.

Criminal⁷ Law. Criminal Law is, perhaps, the most familiar kind of law. Criminal Law is the set of laws that describes what we should and should not do. It also includes the punishments set for people who break the law.

Administrative⁸ Law. As you know, it is the duty of the executive branch to administer, or carry out, laws. In practice, many of the day-to-day functions of government are carried out by the government bureaucracy⁹. The many agencies and bureaus that are a part of the bureaucracy set rules and regulations to govern their own areas. These rules make up the body of law known as *Administrative Law*.

International Law. *International Law* is the body of law that deals with our country and other countries. Any law that affects another government is considered a part of *International Law*. Among these are laws concerning imports and exports, international fishing rights, and so on.

Private Law

The other general category of law is private law. Private law is the body of law that governs how people act toward one another, either as individuals or as groups. Such laws usually do not directly involve the government. Private law is also called civil laws.

Tort Law. A tort¹⁰ is a wrong or an injury someone suffers at the hands of another person. Therefore, *Tort Law* is a set of laws concerned about the rights and duties of people involved in a dispute.

Contract Law. A contract is an agreement between two parties. The two parties can be people or businesses. The terms of the agreement in a contract must be enforceable¹¹ by law. Such laws are a part of the body of law known as *Contract Law*.

Corporate¹² Law. Corporate Law is the set of laws dealing with how corporations can be formed and how they can be operated. As you can guess, Corporate Law and Contract Law are closely linked. This is because corporations use so many contracts.

Family Law. Family Law is that body of law that deals with family units. Included in this broad category are laws about marriage, divorce, abandonment, and adoption.

Property Law. *Property Law* is the set of laws that have to do with property. Some property is considered to be real property. This includes land and anything that is built or growing on that land. This includes things such as elevators and central air-conditioning. Personal property includes

most of the things people own, such as clothing and cars. *Property Law* deals with both kinds of property.

Inheritance¹³ Law. This body of law is closely associated with property law. *Inheritance Law* deals with the transfer of property after death. People can make out wills that tell to whom property should be given. *Inheritance Law* includes laws about making wills. If no will is left, however, *Inheritance Law* dictates¹⁴ who will get what.



🥇 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. category ['kætɪgərɪ] n. 种类,类别,[逻]范畴
- 2. specific[spi'sɪfɪk] adj. 详细而精确的,明确的,特殊的
- 3. overlap [,əʊvə'læp] v. (与……)重叠
- 4. accuse [əˈkjuːz] vt. 控告, 谴责
- 5. constitution [ˌkɒnstɪˈtjʊː[ən] n. 宪法,国体,章程
- 6. upheaval [ʌpˈhiːvəl] n. 剧变
- 7. **criminal** [ˈkrɪmɪnl] *n*. 罪犯, 犯罪者 *adj*. 犯罪的, 犯法的, 罪恶的
- 8. administrative [ədˈmɪnɪstrətɪv] adj. 管理的,行政的
- 9. bureaucracy [bjʊəˈrɒkrəsɪ] n. 官僚, 官僚作风, 官僚机构
- **10. tort** [to:t] n. [律]民事侵权行为
- **11. enforceable** [ɪnˈfɔː səbl] *adj*. 可强行的,可强迫的,可实施的
- **12. corporate** ['kɔːpərɪt] *adj*. 社团的,法人的,共同的,全体的
- 13. inheritance [ɪnˈherɪtəns] n. 遗传,遗产
- **14. dictate** [dɪk'teɪt] v. 口述,口授,使听写,指令,指示,命令,规定



Expression 词句荟萃

1. accuse of 控告; 控诉; 谴责 e.g. She accused him of lying.

她指责他说谎。

The government was accused of incompetence.

政府被指责无能。

2. carry out 履行; 实施; 执行; 落实; 完成(任务)

e.g. He finally carried out his promise.

他最终把他的承诺付诸行动。

Extensive tests have been carried out on the patient.

已对患者进行了全面检查。

- 3. involve in (使)参加,加入;把某人牵涉(牵扯)到某事里
 - e.g. We want to involve as many people as possible in the celebrations.

我们希望参加庆典的人越多越好。

You have involved me in a great deal of extra work.

你害得我添了一大堆额外的工作。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.			
1. There are laws that	rs that the quality of food.		
A. assure	B. insure	C. ensure	
2. The first broad	The first broad of law is public law.		
A. qualification	B. classification	C. investigation	
3. Constitutions are int	ended to give	to government.	
A. spirituality	B. capability	C. stability	
4. If no will is left, <i>Inh</i>	eritance Law	who will get what.	
A. indicates	B. complicates	C. dictates	
5. It is the duty of the		branch to administer, or carry out, laws.	
A. executive	B. perspective	C. perfective	

II. Complete the paragraph with the exact words.
One way to study our many laws is to group them into two 1 law
and 3 law. Both groupings are broken down into 4 kinds of law. As
you read about the specific groups, keep in mind that they sometimes 5 Also,
be careful not to 6 these two groups of laws with the way the courts will handle a
7 over a certain law should such a 8 arise.
III. Write true (T) or false (F).
1Public Law is the set of laws that directly affects the government.
2 Criminal Law is the set of laws dealing with how corporations can be formed and
how they can be operated.
3 Corporate Law is the set of laws that describes what we should and should not do.
4 Inheritance Law deals with the transfer of property after death.
5International Law is the body of law that deals with our country and other countries.

参考译文

虽然每个人都认同美国有很多法律,但是大 :: 法律解决争端的做法相混淆。 多数人都没有注意到法律的不同种类。有些法律 是规定不准开快车的,有些是规定不准在医院附 近喧哗的,有些是禁止在楼宇中点火的,还有针 对抢劫店铺的。有保证食品质量的法律,有提高 高速公路安全性的法律,还有法律要求保存出生 和死亡记录。

研究这些法律的一个途径是把它们归纳为两 大类别——公法和私法。两大类别同时又都可以 细分为不同特殊种类的法律。当你读到这些特殊 的法律时,记着它们有的时候会有重合。同时, 请不要将公法和私法的分类与法庭援引某一特殊

公法

第一个宽泛的法律分类是公法。公法是直接 影响政府的一系列法律。比如,公法可以解决政 府与一个被控有罪的人之间的争端。这样的争端 也可以发生在两级政府之间,或者我国与他国政 府之间。

宪法《宪法》是指宪法体系中的一系列法律。 美国宪法是美国的最高法律。州宪法中的法律也 是宪法的一部分。《宪法》是用来保障政府的稳定, 使政府的规则和形式不至于在短暂的政治、社会

或经济巨变中迅速改变。

刑法《刑法》也许是最被人熟知的法律。《刑法》是一系列描述我们该做和不该做的事情的法律。它同时还包括对违反法律的人的刑罚条例。

行政法 正如你所知,管理和执行法律是执行机关的职责。实际上,政府的很多日常职能都是通过这些机构实施的。那些代办机构和办公署是政府机构的一部分,负责制定管理它们各自区域的规定和规则。而正是这些规则构成了《行政法》的主体。

国际法《国际法》是处理我国和他国关系的 法律体系。所有影响他国政府的法律都被视为《国 际法》的一部分。其中包括有关进出口、国际渔 权等等的法律。

私法

另外一个总的法律范畴是私法。私法是规范 人与人之间行为的法律体,包括个人与个人之间 或群体与群体之间。这样的法律通常不直接涉及 政府。私法也叫民法。

侵权法 民事侵权行为是指某人承受的由他 人实施的不当或伤害。因此,《侵权法》是一系 列关于争端中人们的权利和义务的法律。 **合同法** 合同是两方的合约。两方可以是人或公司。合同中的条款必须依照法律实施。这样的法律就是我们所知的《合同法》的一部分。

企业法《企业法》是一系列关于企业如何成立和运作的法律。就像你能猜到的一样,《企业法》和《合同法》是紧密联系的。这是因为企业的运作要用到很多合同。

家庭法《家庭法》是处理家庭事宜的法律体系。在这一宽泛的范畴之内包括婚姻、离婚、遗弃和收养的法律。

财产法《财产法》是一系列关于财产的法律。一些财产被称为不动产,包括土地和建造或生长在这块土地的一切,例如电梯和中央空调等一些物品。私人财产包括人们所拥有的大部分物品,例如衣物和车。《财产法》是关于上述两部分财产的法律。

遗产法 这个法律体系与财产法紧密相关。《遗产法》是关于人死后财产转移的法律。人们可以通过立遗嘱的方式告知财产的归属。《遗产法》包括如何立遗嘱的法律。然而,如果没有遗嘱留下,《遗产法》还规定了遗产的继承者以及继承内容。

-Answer

- I. 1. A 2. B 3. C 4. C. 5. A
- II. 1. categories 2. public 3. private 4. specific 5. overlap 6. confuse 7. dispute 8. conflict
- III. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T



"美"事一桩

\supset

美国陪审团制度

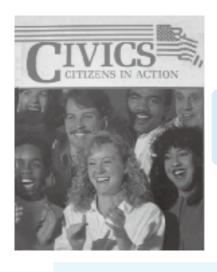
在美国,刑事案件和部分民事案件(主要是民事侵权案件)的审理都有可能使用陪审团。而在 英国及英联邦国家,民事案件基本不再使用陪审团。众所周知,陪审团的基本作用是认定案件事实。 在有陪审团的诉讼中,法官不认定事实,法官的基本作用是控制诉讼程序,根据陪审团认定的事实 选择适用的法律条款。

对于需要陪审团审理的案件,第一步就是挑选陪审员,组成陪审团。陪审员的产生过程往往十分复杂,陪审员的挑选是一项技术性很强的工作。陪审员的挑选是在审理法官的主持下进行的。法 官的助手从当地的选民登记手册中随机抽出候选人名单。法官根据案件的情况确定最初陪审员候选 人数,有时候选人数可多达二三百人。陪审员的挑选是公开进行的。

在正式开庭审理之前,法官将注意事项详细地以书面形式告知陪审员。在某些重大的刑事案件和民事案件的审理中,法官可以根据情况将陪审团与外界隔离开来,以避免陪审员受到外界的干扰。 开庭审理时,法官会不断地给陪审团发出各种指示。为了使陪审团能公正地做出裁决,任何贿赂陪审员的行为都是违法行为,陪审员也必须遵守相应的法律规定,严重违反者将受到刑事制裁。

美国的法庭审理实行交叉询问制,即法官和陪审团都不能直接询问案件的证人,只能由双方当事人的律师询问。律师对自己一方证人的询问叫作主询问,对对方证人的询问称为反询问。陪审团是通过双方律师对证人的询问来了解案件事实的,法官则控制着双方律师的交叉询问。法官与律师讨论案件中的程序事项时,陪审员不能参与,因为陪审团不能裁决程序事项。

当双方的证人都出庭作证后,法官就可以要求陪审团对案件进行讨论并做出裁决。陪审员根据原告的请求初步形成一项裁决意见,然后交由陪审团投票表决。一般的民事和刑事案件要求裁决的投票结果达到9票以上。指控谋杀成立的案件则要求一致通过,全票同意。投票时,要求 12 名陪审员都要投票。当然历史上也曾有过诉讼中 1 名陪审员缺席,11 名陪审员投票仍然有效的情形。一般的案件如果不能就原告的请求是否成立达成9票以上的统一意见时,就需要陪审团重新审议,直至形成多数裁决意见。陪审团如何认定事实以及如何形成裁决的过程都是绝对保密的,即使在案件判决生效后,陪审员将案件的讨论过程透露出去也将受到法律的制裁。在民事赔偿案件的审理中,陪审团同样只能在原告所要求的数额范围内做出裁决,不能超出原告请求的数额。这一点与我国法系中的辩论原则的精神相同。在开庭前,法官会告知当事人及双方律师和陪审团将在下次开庭时宣布裁决结果。开庭时,法官将询问陪审团团长是否形成裁决意见。如果形成裁决意见,团长将宣布裁决及投票结果。在陪审团团长宣读裁决结果后,法官还将一一询问各位陪审员的意见,是同意,还是反对。如果这时有陪审员反对,且反对票超过4票时,裁决将无效,陪审团就要重新审议。



Responsibilities of Citizens

公民的责任和义务

作为公民,美国人有两种责任。第一种是法律框架下的责任,或者说是所有美国人都要根据国家法律履行的责任。第二种是美国人自愿或者自由履行的责任,目的是使美国的民主制度继续发展。

As citizens, Americans have two kinds of responsibilities. The first is duties under the law, or duties all Americans must perform according to the laws of the nation. The second kind of responsibilities is duties that Americans perform voluntarily, or freely, in order to keep democracy alive.

Duties under the Law

Some countries require a great deal from their citizens. Many, in fact, ask much more of their citizens than the United States asks of Americans. In Israel, for example, citizens must spend months or years in national service. This is in addition to required military service. Some nations also require people to vote. In other words, deciding not to vote is breaking the law.

Remember, however, that the United States is founded on the idea of individual freedom. This belief is so strong that it has kept

the requirements for American citizens quite limited.

Attending School. The responsibilities of American citizens start early in life. One of the first duties of Americans is to attend school. Every state requires that students attend school until they reach a certain age. In most states, this age is 16. The requirement to attend school is vital in a democracy. After all, it is through education that American citizens learn the skills necessary to be informed, effective citizens of their country.

Obeying the Laws. One of the most important responsibilities required of American citizens is to know and obey the laws of the land. This, too, starts at a very early age.

Many of the nation's laws are well-known. Everyone knows that certain laws forbid crimes such as murder, arson¹, assault², or robbery. But, not everyone knows about laws that guarantee³ pure water, regulate⁴ the

disposal⁵ of hazardous⁶ waste materials, or provide help for new businesses.

It is important for all citizens to know as much as they can about the laws that affect their lives. In this way, they can avoid problems and take advantage of new opportunities. And, should a law seem unfair or unnecessary, citizens can work through government to change it.

Paying Taxes. By law, all Americans must pay a variety of taxes. These range from income taxes to sales taxes.

Many citizens today are concerned about this duty. They feel the amount of taxes they are required to pay is too high. It is important to know, however, that tax money pays for many necessities on which we rely every day. Among these are police and fire protection, education, highways and road repair, national defense, and the support of the government itself. But, tax money can be wasted. To help prevent this, it is important for all citizens to keep themselves informed and aware of how their tax money is budgeted and spent.

Defending the Nation. American citizens have a responsibility to help defend the nation. In times of peace, the military usually is made up of volunteers. Even in peacetime, however, men 18 years of age are required to register for the draft⁷. Draft registration means giving your name, age, and address to the government so that you can be contacted for military service in

case the country suddenly needs to increase its armed forces.

Serving in Court. At some point in their lives, many Americans are asked to serve in court. They may be asked to serve on a jury or called to serve as witnesses.

It is possible to be excused from these duties if special problems at home or at work arise. Remember, however, that the court system depends on the work of citizens. Only by citizens taking part can a fair trial⁸ be guaranteed to all.

Voluntary Duties

Some citizen responsibilities are voluntary. That is, they are carried out by choice. Such activities are enforced⁹ only by each American's willingness to perform them. Even so, these duties are as important to the American way of life as those duties required under the law.

Knowing and Respecting Citizen

Rights. In many ways, the American people are the keepers of their own rights. One way they can protect their rights is by taking the trouble to find out about them. Clarence Gideon found out about his rights. He then used his knowledge to help himself and many others accused of crimes. Martin Luther King, Jr. and other civil rights leaders helped people learn about their rights and how these rights were being violated¹⁰. The results changed many people's lives.

Tolerating¹¹ Others' Views. In a country as large as the United States, people seldom agree completely on any one issue. Part of the key to getting things done is being able to tolerate differences in viewpoints. All citizens should promote their own interests. But, it also is necessary to listen carefully to others and to try to understand their points of view. Only this can make compromise and progress possible.

Casting Your Vote. Voting is one of the greatest responsibilities of the American people. In many countries of the world, citizens do not have the right to vote. In such countries, the government makes all of the decisions for

the people living there.

In the United States, however, citizens are called upon to vote on everything from school taxes to the President of the United States. Only by voting—by choosing the government's leaders and steering the course of the nation—can the people really rule. Certainly, the responsibility to vote is one that should never be taken lightly.

Taking Part in Democracy. Voting is only one way in which citizens can take part in democracy. Because of the freedom Americans enjoy, there are many different ways to take part in. In fact, everyone can find a way to become an active citizen.



📈 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1. arson** ['ɑːsn] *n*. 纵火, 纵火罪
- 2. assault [ə'sɔ:lt] n. 攻击, 袭击 v. 袭击
- **3.** guarantee [.gærən'ti:] n. 保证,保证书,担保,抵押品 vt. 保证,担保
- 4. regulate [ˈregjʊleɪt] vt. 管制,控制,调节,校准
- **5.** disposal [dɪs'pəʊzəl] n. 处理,处置,支配
- **6. hazardous** ['hæzədəs] *adj*. 危险的,冒险的,碰运气的
- 7. draft [dra:ft] n. 征兵, 选派, 草稿
- **8. trial** ['traɪəl] *n*. 试验, 考验, 审讯, 审判
- **9. enforce** [ɪnˈfɔːs] vt. 强迫,执行,坚持,加强
- **10.violate** ['vaɪəleɪt] vt. 违犯, 违反, 妨碍
- 11. tolerate ['tʊləreɪt] vt. 忍受,容忍



Expression 词句荟萃

1. keep... alive 使活着, 使继续着

e.g. Doctors kept the baby alive for six weeks.

医生们使婴儿活了六周。

The news of victory kept us alive in excitement.

胜利的消息使我们兴奋不已。

2. take advantage of 利用;利用(机会);欺骗;占……的便宜

e.g. We took full advantage of the hotel facilities.

我们充分利用了旅馆设施。

He took advantage of my generosity by taking more than I had intended to give.

他利用了我的慷慨占了便宜,拿走的比我想要给的还多。

3. in case 以防; 以防万一

e.g. You probably won't need to call—but take my number, just in case.

你很可能无须打电话,不过还是记下我的电话号码吧,以防万一。

In case you are wondering why Joe's here—let me explain...

我来解释一下吧,免得你奇怪乔为什么在这儿。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.

1. The first is duties under the law, or duties all Americans must perform ______ the laws of the nation.

A. according to

B. regarding to

C. considering to

2. He then used his knowledge to help himself and many others

crimes.

A. excused of

B. accused of

C. accented of

3. Martin Luther King Jr., and other civil rights leaders helped people learn about their rights					
and how these rights were being					
A. violated B. vibrated C. vetoed					
4. Part of the key to getting things done is being able to differences in					
viewpoints.					
A. trouble B. terrify C. tolerate					
5. The responsibility to vote is one that should never be taken					
A. slightly B. lightly C. brightly					
6. Such activities are only by each American's willingness to perform them.					
A. enforced B. reinforced C. forced					
II. Write true (T) or false (F).					
1 Draft registration means giving your name, age, and address to the government so that					
you can be contacted for military service in case the country suddenly needs to increase its					
armed forces.					
2 In a country as large as the United States, people always agree completely on any one					
issue.					
3 In the United States, however, citizens are called upon to vote on everything from					
school taxes to the President of the United States.					
4 The United States is founded on the idea of individual freedom.					
5 Voting is the only way in which citizens can take part in democracy.					
III. Complete these sentences.					
Many of the nation's laws are 1 Everyone knows that certain laws 2					
crimes such as murder, arson, assault, or robbery. But, not everyone knows about laws that					
3 pure water, 4 the disposal of 5 waste					
materials, or provide help for new businesses.					
It is important for all citizens to know as much as they can about the laws that 6					
their lives. In this way, they can avoid problems and take 7 of new opportunities.					
And, 8 a law seem unfair or unnecessary, citizens can work 9					
government to change it.					

参考译文

作为公民,美国人有两种责任。第一种是法 律框架下的责任,或者说是所有美国人都要根据 国家法律履行的责任。第二种是美国人自愿或者 自由履行的责任,目的是使美国的民主制度继续 发展。

法律框架下的责任

一些国家对公民有很多要求。实际上,很多 国家都比美国对公民的要求多得多。比如,在以 色列,公民必须为国家服务数月甚至数年。这是 在兵役之外的附加要求。一些国家还要求公民必 须投票选举。换句话说,选择弃权是违反法律的。

然而,请记住,美国是基于个人自由的理念 而建立的。这样的理念非常强烈以至于使得对美 国公民的要求非常有限。

上学 美国公民的责任开始得很早。其中第一个责任就是上学。每个州都要求学生们上学,直到达到一定的年龄为止。在大多数州,这个年龄通常是 16 岁。上学这个要求在民主体制中非常重要。毕竟,美国公民都是通过接受教育来学会一些技能,以成为知情和有效的国家公民。

遵守法律 美国公民最重要的责任之一就是 了解和遵守法律。这也是他们从很小的时候就需 要履行的责任。

国家的很多法律都是众所周知的。每个人都 知道有法律是禁止犯罪的,例如谋杀、纵火、袭 击和抢劫。但是,并不是人人都知道有法律来保 证水源纯净,规范处置危险废物,或者为新的企 业提供帮助。 非常重要的是,所有的公民都应该尽可能多地了解那些影响他们生活的法律。只有这样,他们才能避免问题并且利用新的机遇。同时,如果一个法律显失公平或者根本没有存在的必要,公民们可以通过政府的运作来改变它。

缴税 根据法律,所有的美国人都必须缴纳 各种各样的税款。范围从收入税到营业税。

很多公民现在都比较关注这一责任。他们感 觉他们被要求缴纳的税款额度太高。然而,必须 知道的重要的一点是,我们交的税款是用来支付 我们每天生活所依赖的很多必需品的。例如,警 察和消防、教育、高速公路和道路养护、国防, 还有政府自身的运营支持。但是,税款也有可能 被浪费。为了防止这种事情发生,所有的公民都 有权了解他们缴纳的税款是如何预算并被实际花 费的,这点非常重要。

保卫国家 美国公民有保卫国家的责任。在和平年代,军队通常是由志愿者组成的。然而,即使是和平年代,年满 18 岁的男性也都被要求进行征兵登记。征兵登记就是将你的姓名、年龄和地址提供给政府,以便在国家突然需要增加武装力量时可以联系到你服兵役。

配合上庭 很多美国人都在生活中的某一时刻被要求上庭。他们可能被选为陪审团中的一员或作为目击证人而出庭。

如果家中或工作中有特殊问题出现,这样的 义务是可以被免除的。然而,要记住,法庭系统 要依靠公民才能运转。只有通过公民的参与才可 以向所有人保证公平的审判。

自愿义务

一部分的公民责任是自愿的。也就是说,他们可以通过选择来执行。这样的行为只能通过美国人自己的执行意愿来实施。尽管如此,这些义务也像那些法律框架下必须履行的义务一样对美国式的生活非常重要。

了解和尊重公民权利 美国人在很多方面都是他们自己权利的捍卫者。其中一种保护自己权利的方法就是不怕麻烦地去了解他们的权利。克拉伦斯·基甸弄清了他的权利。于是他用自己的知识帮助了他自己和很多其他被判有罪的人们。马丁·路德·金和其他公民权利倡导者帮助人们了解了他们的权利以及他们的权利是如何被侵犯的。这样的结果改变了很多人的生活。

宽容他人的想法 在美国这么大的国家里, 人们很少能对同一事件达成完全一致。使事情顺 利进行的关键是要宽容他人的不同观点。所有的

公民都应促进他们自己的利益。但是,同时也很 必要的是认真听取别人的意见并努力理解他人的 观点。只有这样,才可以使妥协和进步成为可能。

投下你的选票 选举是美国人最伟大的责任 之一。世界上很多国家的公民都没有选举权。在 那样的国家里,政府替生活在那里的人们做所有 的决定。

然而,在美国,公民们被号召就所有的事情投票,从学校缴税到美国总统大选。只有通过选举——通过选举政府的领导并掌控国家的运作——人民才能真正治理国家。当然,选举的责任是永远不能被当成儿戏的。

参与民主 选举只是公民参与民主的途径之一。由于美国人所享有的自由,还有很多方式参与民主。事实上,每个人都能够找到成为一个积极公民的途径。

"美"事一桩

1

美国总统选举

美国实行总统制,总统选举每四年举行一次。

美国总统选举制度复杂,过程漫长。其主要程序包括预选、各党召开全国代表大会确定总统候选人、总统候选人竞选、全国选民投票、选举人团投票表决和当选总统就职。

预选是美国总统选举的第一阶段,通常从选举年的年初开始,到年中结束。其间,各党派竞选 人将争夺本党总统候选人提名。预选结束后,民主、共和两大政党将分别在第三季度召开全国代表 大会。会议的主要任务是最终确定本党总统、副总统候选人,并讨论通过总统竞选纲领。

两党全国代表大会之后,总统竞选活动便正式拉开帷幕。两党总统候选人耗费巨资,在全国各 地开展竞选旅行、进行广告大战、发表竞选演说、会见选民、召开记者招待会以及进行公开辩论等。 此外,候选人还将通过多种形式阐述对国内外事务的政策主张,以赢得选民信任,争取选票。

全国选民投票在选举年 11 月份第一个周二举行,这一天被称为大选日。为避免大选日投票过于拥挤,目前美国大多数州允许选民在大选日前 45 天内提前投票。

美国总统选举实行选举人团制度,因此选民投票时,不仅要在总统候选人当中选择,而且要选出代表 50 个州和首都华盛顿哥伦比亚特区的 538 名选举人,以组成选举人团。在大选中,美国绝大多数州和首都实行"胜者全得"制度,即在一州或首都获得选民票最多者获得该州或首都所有选举人票。赢得 270 张或以上选举人票的总统候选人即获得选举胜利。因此,根据各州选举人票归属情况,通常大选日当晚就能决出选举获胜者。

选举人团投票表决在选举年 12 月第二个星期三之后的第一个星期一举行,选举人在其所在州的首府投票表决。一般情况下,选举人团投票表决只是例行公事。

此外,如果两大党总统候选人各获得 269 张选举人票或因有第三党候选人"入围"而导致无人获得 270 张或以上选举人票,则总统人选由国会众议院决定。这种情况在美国历史上也曾发生过。

总统就职典礼是美国总统选举的最后一道程序。直至当选总统于次年 1 月 20 日在总统就职典礼上宣誓就职,总统选举过程才宣告最终结束。

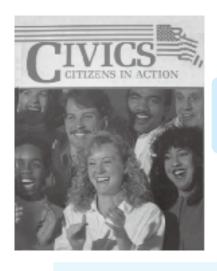
2009年美国总统选举是自 1952年以来,总统候选人中首次没有在职总统或副总统的总统选举。



Answer

- I. 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C. 5. B 6. A
- II. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F
- III. 1. well-known 2. forbid 3. guarantee 4. regulate
 - 5. hazardous 6. affect 7. advantage 8. should 9. through





Women and Public Service

妇女和公共服务组织

"女士免谈"是一篇杂志文章的题目,内容是关于美国青年商会会员的。这个组织拥有约25万名会员,只接受男性为正式会员。

"NO WOMEN WANTED." This was the title of a magazine article about the United States Junior Chamber of Commerce, or Jaycees¹. This organization, which has about 250,000 members, only accepted men as full members.

In the 1970s, a few local Jaycee chapters, including two in Minnesota, felt it was time to change their policy. It was decided that women should be admitted as full members. The national Jaycees argued that accepting women violated the bylaws² of the organization. In 1978, the Minnesota chapters were notified³ that they were going to be expelled⁴ from the Jaycees.

Instead of dropping their women members, the local chapters filed⁵ charges of discrimination. Minnesota has a law preventing discrimination in "a place of public accommodation". The state courts decided that the Jaycees was such a place and found it guilty of discrimination against women. The national Jaycees appealed

to the Supreme Court.

In 1984, the Supreme Court handed down its decision. It said that the Junior Chamber of Commerce chiefly sold itself to members as a means of improving business skills and contacts. Therefore, it was offering a public service and was considered by the Court to be a public accommodation.

This ruling was reinforced⁶ in 1987 when the Supreme Court decided a similar case involving the Duarte, California, chapter of Rotary International. Here, too, the Court ruled that such an organization—dedicated⁷ to improving local businesses—could not legally exclude women.

The Supreme Court ruled in both cases that even though these groups were private organizations, they offered a public service. As such, they could not deny women's rights of full membership.



🤾 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1. Jaycee** ['dʒeɪ'si:] *n*. 美国青年商会会员(年龄在21至39岁之间,为美国和其他国家的当地社区 提供援助)
- **2.** bylaw ['baɪlɔ:] *n*. 社团制定的规章制度
- 3. notify ['nəʊtɪfaɪ] v. 通报
- 4. expel [ɪks'pel] v. 驱逐,开除,排出,发射
- 5. file [faɪl] v. 提出
- 6. reinforce [ˌriːɪnˈfɔːs] vt. 加强,补充
- 7. dedicate ['dedɪkeɪt] vt. 献(身), 致力



Expression 词句荟萃

- **1. expel (from)** 把……开除(或除名); 驱逐出境
 - e.g. He was one of the Olympic athletes expelled for drug-taking.

他是因服禁药被取消比赛资格的奥运会运动员。

Foreign journalists are being expelled.

外国记者被驱逐出境。

- **2.** appeal to 上诉;申诉;有吸引力;呼吁
 - e.g. He said he would appeal after being found guilty on four counts of murder.

法庭判决他犯有四项谋杀罪,他表示要上诉。

The design has to appeal to all ages and social groups.

设计要雅俗共赏,老幼皆宜。

Organizers appealed to the crowd not to panic.

组织者呼吁人群不要惊慌。

- 3. hand down 把某事物传下去;传给(后代);正式宣布;公布
 - e.g. These skills used to be handed down from father to son.

这些技术以往都是父子相传。

The judge has handed down his verdict.

法官已经宣布了裁决结果。

4. dedicate to 把……奉献给

e.g. He dedicated his life to helping the poor.

他毕生致力于帮助穷人。

A memorial stone was dedicated to those who were killed in the war.

为阵亡将士纪念碑举行了落成典礼。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.				
1. This ruling was	in 1987 w	nen the Supreme Court decided a similar case.		
A. strengthened	B. forced	C. reinforced		
2. The Court ruled that	at such an organization—o	dedicated to improving local businesses—could		
not legally	women.			
A. elude	B. exclude	C. allude		
3. In 1978, the Minnesota chapters were that they were going to be expelled				
from the Jaycees.				
A. noticed	B. notified	C. natured		
4. In 1984, the Suprem	ne Court	its decision.		
A. handed down	B. handed over	C. handed in		
5. Instead of droppin	g their women members	s, the local chapters charges of		
discrimination.				
A. file	B. motivate	C. stimulate		
II. Write true (T) or false (F).				
1 The state courts found the Jaycees guilty of discrimination against women.				

)	2 Minnesota has a law preventing discrimination in "a place of public accommodation."				
	3 Jaycee was not considered by the Court to be a public accommodation.				
	III. Complete these sentences.				
	1. The national Jaycees argued that accepting women the bylaws of the				
	organization.				
	2. The Minnesota chapters were going to be from the Jaycees.				
	3. The national Jaycees the Supreme Court.				
)	4. The Junior Chamber of Commerce chiefly sold itself to members as a of				
	improving business skills and contacts.				

参考译文

内容是关于美国青年商会会员的。这个组织拥有 约25万名会员,只接受男性为正式会员。

在 20 世纪 70 年代,几个地方的青年商会组 织,包括两个在明尼苏达州的,感觉是时候改变 他们的政策了。他们决定女性应该被接纳为正式 会员。国家青年商会提出异议,认为接受女性会 员违反了组织的相关法规。在1978年,明尼苏 达州的两个地方青年商会组织被通报, 他们将被 驱逐出国家商会组织。

那两个青年商会组织不但没有放弃他们的女 性会员,还以歧视为由提起诉讼。明尼苏达州有 一则法律禁止发生在"公共场所"的歧视。州法 庭认定青年商会属于公共场所,因此判定国际青 : 他们不能拒绝女性成为正式会员的权利。

"女士免谈"是一篇杂志文章的题目,文章 : 年商会犯有歧视妇女罪。国家青年商会上诉到最 高法院。

> 1984年,最高法院宣布了它的裁决。法院 认为美国青年商会提供给会员们的是提高商业技 能和联系的途径,因此,它是在提供一种公共服 务,而且在法院看来它属于公共场所。

> 这一规定在1987年最高法院在审理类似案 件的时候得到进一步的巩固, 那个案子涉及位于 加利福尼亚的杜阿特扶轮社。当时,法院也认定 这样的组织——致力于促进地方商业——不能合 法拒绝接纳女性。

最高法院在两个案子中都裁定,即使这些组 织是私人组织,他们提供的也是公共服务。因此,

"美"事一桩

奥普拉・温弗瑞(Oprah Winfrey)

她是美国最受欢迎电视人,哈普娱乐集团公司董事长,全美 50 名女强人之一,20 世纪最有影响力的100 位名人之一,《福布斯》杂志排行榜上的亿万富翁。《福布斯》杂志 2009 年度"全球最有权力人物"排行榜第45 位。

奥普拉是美国的脱口秀主持人。从采访记者到政客,诸多人士都在争相效仿她的风格,但却没人能够企及她的声望与收入。她所主持的《奥普拉·温弗瑞脱口秀》及其专题节目"Oprah Winfrey Prime Time"在全世界132个国家播出。才华与商业头脑兼备使她很快成为美国第一位黑人亿万富翁。她的节目曾获得过30多项艾美奖,以及无数的其他成就奖项。同时,她还是一位出色的演员和制片人。她是美国最有影响力的人物之一。

奥普拉·温弗瑞于 1954 年 1 月 29 日出生在美国最贫穷的地区之一——密西西比州的科西阿斯科。她的父母是一对未婚青少年,她小时候生活在外婆家的农场里,少年时曾经不幸受到一些亲戚、邻居的虐待。贫穷和不幸的遭遇并没有毁灭她对知识的渴望和对生活的信心。后来她利用参加选美赢来的奖金进入大学学习,并且凭借自己的天赋和不懈努力进入了媒体领域。1986 年,她创办了《奥普拉·温弗瑞秀》节目,很快受到观众的欢迎,成为美国脱口秀的领军节目。她的节目内容主要关注个人问题,寻找办法激励、帮助人们拯救自我,她的目标是让电视改变人们的生活,给每一个人、每一个家庭带去快乐和成就感。

她是一个成功的人,如今她已经成为全世界千千万万人的偶像。她那从贫穷、被虐待到富有、知名乃至成功的征途,不断给她的广大观众以希望和帮助。她知道自己是谁,应该怎样生活。正像她自己解释的:"我是一个追求真实的人,这也是我每天在节目中所做的——展现真实。"

奥普拉·温弗瑞格言: You must be responsible for yourself. (你要对你自己负责。)

Answer

I. 1. C 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. A

II. 1. T 2. T 3. F

III. 1. violated 2. expelled 3. appealed to 4. means

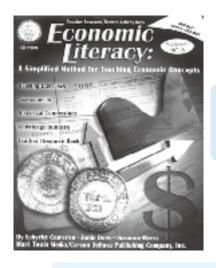


Part 2 Economy 经济

美国经济经历了几百年的发展历史,其发展过程中有许多值得其他国家学习和吸取的经验。

本章对美国经济中的一些专业术语和基本概念进行了解释和介绍说明。这些概念使读者能够 对美国经济不同时期的特点以及美国经济的发展有一定的了解。通过阅读这些文章,读者对美国 经济系统的运作方式会有深刻的理解和认识。

对经济术语概念的学习不仅是学习美国经济的必要条件,还有助于读者对英语语言的学习,同时更有助于加强大家对学习英文科技文写作方法的认识。



7

Bartering

以物易物

几千年前,古代人并不使用金钱。他们以狩猎和采集食物为生。随着人们学会如何种植植物和驯化动物,盈余的或过多的食物便产生了。这种盈余允许人们以物易物。

Early Forms of Bartering¹

Thousands of years ago, ancient people did not use money. They lived by hunting and gathering food. As people learned how to domesticate² plants and animals, a surplus³, or an overabundance⁴, of food was created. This surplus allowed people to barter. Bartering is the trading of items people have for the items they need or want.

Bartering in the New World

Early explorers of the New World found Native Americans willing to trade furs for blankets, metal tools, and trinkets. The trapping⁵ and trading of furs became a profitable⁶, or moneymaking business. The Hudson Bay Company set up trading posts in Canada and later expanded into the U.S. territory⁷. As the demand for furs increased, European trappers competed with Native Americans in the hunt for furbearing animals.

Settlement of the New World led to many interesting exchanges between settlers and Native Americans. As settlements grew, the demand for land increased. The settlers often traded with the Native Americans to acquire more land. One famous act of bartering occurred in the early 1600s. Dutch settlers were able to swap 24 dollars worth

of trading goods with the Native Americans for the island that is now Manhattan.

Bartering in Colonial and Revolutionary America

Bartering played a major role in the economy of colonial America. The colonists found bartering with items they had access to, such as tobacco and corn, an acceptable way to pay debts and buy goods within the colonies. During the American Revolution, colonists were once again forced to rely on bartering. Even George Washington found it necessary to barter to obtain supplies for the Continental Army.



The nation grew after winning its independence. As settlers pushed further and further west, bartering helped explorers and settlers build friendly relationships with Native Americans. The journals of the Lewis and Clark Expedition contain many accounts⁸ of bartering with Native Americans.

Modern-Day Bartering

Bartering is still an important economic tool. Many people, communities, and nations find bartering useful in acquiring the things they need and want. In order to save money, companies and individuals have discovered the convenience of online bartering.

🥇 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1.barter** ['bɑːtə] n. 物品交换, 实物交易 v. 物品交换, 交换
- **2.domesticate** [dəˈmestɪkeɪt] vt. 驯养, 使安于土地, 教化
- 3.surplus ['sɜːpləs] n. 剩余, 过剩, 盈余
- 4.overabundance ['əʊvərə'bʌndəns] n. 过剩;过多
- **5.trap** [træp] v. 使(某物)留在某处;用捕捉器捕捉动物
- **6.profitable** ['profitabl] *adj*. 有利可图的
- 7.territory ['terɪtərɪ] n. 领土, 版图, 地域
- **8.account** [əˈkaʊnt] n. 计算,账目



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. allow sb. to do 允许, 让某人做某事
 - e.g. He does not allow his son to go abroad.

他不让他的儿子出国。

My mother doesn't allow me to play computer.

我妈妈不允许我玩电脑。

- 2. be able to 能够
 - e.g. Although Bob is only 3 years old, he is able to draw some simple pictures.

虽然鲍勃只有三岁大,他已经能画一些简单的画了。

You are better able to do it than I am.

你比我更有能力做这件事。

- 3. find sth. useful in doing 发现某物(在某方面)有用
 - e.g. Lily found the book very useful in cooking.

丽莉发现这本书十分有助于烹饪。

Sam found the glasses very useful in protecting the eyes.

山姆发现这副眼镜对保护眼睛十分有益。

{====

Exercise 牛刀小试

I.	N	/ri	te t	he	corr	'ect	let	ter	in 1	the	blan	k.
----	---	-----	------	----	------	------	-----	-----	------	-----	------	----

1. They lived hunting and gathering food.

A. at

B. in

C. by

2. This surplus allowed people ______ barter.

A. for

B. in

C. to

3. Early explorers of the New World found Native Americans to trade furs for

blankets, metal tools, and tri	nkets.	
A. is willing	B. willing	C. willingness
4. As the demand furs	s increased, E	uropean trappers competed with Native Americans
in the hunt for fur-bearing a	nimals.	
A. for	B. in	C. at
5. Settlement of the New Wor	rld led	many interesting exchanges between settlers and
Native Americans.		
A. in	B. into	C. to
6. Bartering played a major ro	le the	economy colonial America.
A. at	B. in	C. on
7. The colonists found bartering	ng with items	they had access, such as tobacco and corn,
an acceptable way to pay de	ebts and buy g	oods within the colonies.
A. to	B. at	C. in
8. During the American Revol	ution, colonis	ts were once again forced to rely bartering.
A. at	B.in	C. on
II. Write true (T) or fals	se (F).	
1. The colonists foun	d bartering w	rith items they had access to, such as tobacco and
		buy goods within the colonies.
		ssary to barter to obtain supplies for the Continental
Army.		•
3. As settlers pushed	further and fu	urther west, bartering helped explorers and settlers
build friendly relationships wi		
•		and individuals have discovered the convenience of
online bartering.	•	
C		
III. Complete these sent	tences.	
1. The nation grew after		ndependence
		tive Americans in the hunt for fur-bearing animals.
		nd individuals have discovered the convenience of
online bartering.	tompanios ai	in in the control of
omino ourtering.		
\sim		

跟美国学生一起学英语: 高级版

4. They lived by hunting and (gather) food.

5. The settlers often traded the Native Americans to acquire more land.

参考译文

以物易物的早期形式

几千年前,古代人并不使用金钱。他们以 狩猎和采集食物为生。随着人们学会种植植物和 驯化动物,盈余的或过多的食物便产生了。这种 盈余允许人们以物易物。以物易物是指人们用所 拥有的物品换取所需要的或想要的物品的贸易 活动。

新大陆的以物易物

新大陆的早期探险者发现,美洲土著人愿意 用毛皮换取毛毯、五金工具和小饰物。毛皮的获 取和贸易成为一种有利可图的、赚钱的生意。哈 德逊湾公司在加拿大设立了贸易站,后来又扩展 到美国境内。随着人们对毛皮需求的增加,欧洲 捕猎者与印第安人争相捕猎毛皮兽。

新大陆的移民和当地的土著居民之间进行了很多有趣的贸易往来。随着定居的移民不断增加,土地的需求量不断增大,移民经常与土著交易以获得更多的土地。在17世纪初就发生了一个有名的交易。荷兰移民用仅值24美元的货物从美国土著那里换取了如今的曼哈顿。

殖民时期及美国革命时期的以物易物

以物易物对美国殖民地的经济发挥了重要作用。殖民者发现用他们可获取的物品以物易物,如烟草和玉米,用以支付债务和在殖民地内购买商品,是一种可接受的方式。美国独立战争期间,殖民者被迫再次依靠以物易物。就连乔治·华盛顿也认为有必要通过以物易物为大陆军获取物资。

国家赢得独立后逐渐发展。拓荒者向越来越远的西部地区推进,物物交易帮助探险家和拓荒者与印第安人建立了友好的关系。刘易斯和克拉克远征队的日志中载有多个与印第安人进行物物交易的账项。

现代以物易物

以物易物仍然是一种重要的经济手段。许多 个人、社区和国家在获取所需要或想要的东西时, 会发现以物易物是一种很有用的方式。为了节省 资金,公司和个人已经认识到网络以物易物的便 利性。

"美"事一桩



现代易货交易

现代社会网络发达,交易双方网络平台的存在使避开金融系统直接交换大宗物品成为可能,网络第三方信用体系建设和完善是易货交易发展的前提。

现代物物交换始于 20 世纪 50 年代的美国。从 20 世纪 80 年代起,现代易货交易公司在美国、加拿大、澳大利亚等国蓬勃发展,成为这些国家减少现金用量、增加销售、减少库存、开发新客户、开辟新市场、促进经济发展的重要方式。进入 20 世纪 90 年代,网络技术的成熟发展和应用为现代易货交易提供了更加完善的技术基础和应用条件,电子商务与易货交易的结合成为以高新技术改造传统企业的典范。

如果用一句话来解释现代物物交换,那就是基于网络这个交易平台,利用易货额度(而不是现金)及特殊的易货交易软件,打破时间和空间的限制,实现企业与企业、企业与消费者之间商品或服务的自由交换。

A Humor 休闲时刻



换大米

在农村,有拉着马车换大米的小贩,这天串村串到了阿蛋村里面,从村子西头一路吆喝着走了过去。阿蛋家在村子的西头,听见吆喝也没出去,不紧不慢拿了个碗,舀了半碗玉米,然后走出大门,喊了一嗓子:"换大米的!"换大米的已经走到了村东头,又拐回来,走跟前一看,不乐意了:"你把我大老远喊过来,就换一碗玉米的大米啊?"阿蛋也不乐意了:"谁说的,我换半碗。"

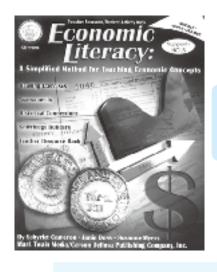
Answer

I. 1. C 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. C

II. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F

III. 1. winning 2. with 3. In 4. gathering 5. with





8

History of Money 钱币发展史

随着人类文明的发展,以物易物成为越来越难被使用的经济系统。人们开始使用贝壳、盐和牛等物品作为交换单位,或者说作为最早的货币。

From Bartering to Currency

As civilizations grew, bartering became an increasingly more difficult economic system to use. People began using items such as shells, salt, and cattle as the unit of exchange, or the first money. Gradually, a money economy replaced the barter system for most of the world.

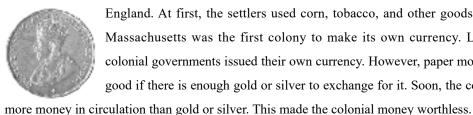
When trade and travel expanded beyond the local community¹, people sought a commodity², or a common item, that everyone would accept for payment. Lumps³ of precious metal became a standard unit of exchange. Gold and silver were the most commonly used metals because they were durable⁴ and could be divided into smaller pieces.



Coins made from precious metals were first used in Turkey, Egypt, Greece, and Rome. However, carrying around bags of coins eventually became too burdensome⁵, so a more convenient form of money evolved. The Chinese was the first civilization to use paper money; later, European countries adopted the custom.

Currency in the New World

The first settlers to the New World brought little money with them. England prohibited⁶ the colonies from producing currency. This was a way to force the colonies to trade exclusively⁷ with



England. At first, the settlers used corn, tobacco, and other goods as money. Massachusetts was the first colony to make its own currency. Later, other colonial governments issued their own currency. However, paper money is only good if there is enough gold or silver to exchange for it. Soon, the colonies had

Continentals⁸ and Greenbacks⁹

Enthusiasm for printing paper money continued to cause problems for Americans. During the American Revolution, the Continental Congress issued continentals, or paper money of the national government, to finance the war. The United States government also issued paper money, nicknamed greenbacks, during the Civil War to pay debts. Both times, the paper money became worthless because there wasn't enough gold or silver to back the new money. During these times, banks were also allowed to issue paper money.



To establish better control over the supply of money in circulation, Congress passed the Federal Reserve Act in 1913. The United States Treasury bought up all the paper money in circulation. Federal Reserve Banks, established under the new law, were the only banks authorized¹⁰ to issue paper money. The Federal Reserve Banks were also given the job of managing the nation's money supply. Today, Federal Reserve notes, our current paper money,

are printed by the Bureau of Engraving and Printing. These notes are legal tender, i.e. the official money used for payment, for all debts in the United States.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. community [kəˈmju:nɪtɪ] n. 公社,团体,社会,(政治)共同体
- 2. commodity [kəˈmɒdɪtɪ] n. 日用品
- 3. lump [lʌmp] n. 块(尤指小块), 肿块, 笨人
- 4. durable ['djʊərəbl] adj. 持久的, 耐用的
- **5. burdensome** ['ba:dnsəm] *adj*. 繁重的, 烦累的, 难以承担的
- 6. prohibit [prəˈhɪbɪt] vt. 禁止,阻止
- 7. exclusive [ɪksˈkluːsɪv] adj. 排外的,孤傲的,唯我独尊的,独占的,唯一的
- 8. continental [,kontɪ'nentl] adj. 大陆的, 大陆性的 n. 欧洲人
- 9. greenback ['gri:nbæk] n. 美钞, 背部为绿色的动物
- 10. authorize ['ɔːθəraɪz] v. 批准; 授权



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. be divided into 被分成……
 - e.g. His house was divided into 4 parts after his death.

在他死后,他的房子被分成了四份。

The novel was divided into chapters.

那部小说被分成了若干章节。

- 2. bring up 培养, 教育, 提出
 - e.g. She is account for bringing up two children.

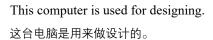
她一个人负起抚养两个孩子的全部责任。

You can bring up these matters in the committee.

你可以在委员会中提出这些问题。

- 3. be used for 被用来做……
 - e.g. This dictionary is used for checking fresh words.

这本字典是用来查生词的。





Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.				
1. As civilizations grev	w, bartering becan	ne an more difficult economic system to use.		
A. increasingly	B. increasing	C. increased		
2. Gradually, a money	economy	the barter system for most of the world.		
A. placed	B. replaced	C. replacing		
3. Gold and silver we	re the most comm	nonly used metals because they were durable and could		
be divided sm	naller pieces.			
A. to	B. into	C. as		
4. Enthusiasm	_ printing paper n	noney continued to cause problems for Americans.		
A. to	B. for	C. on		
5 around bags	s of coins eventua	lly became too burdensome.		
A. Carrying	B. Carry	C. Carried		
6. Paper money is only	y if there i	is enough gold or silver to exchange for it.		
A. one	B. well	C. good		
7. Coins from p	recious metals we	ere first used in Turkey, Egypt, Greece, and Rome.		
A. made	B. making	C. make		
8. The Chinese were the first civilization to use paper money; later, European countries				
the custom.				
A. adopted	B. made	C. had		
II. Write true (T) or false (F).				
1 Coins made from precious metals were first used in India, Egypt, Greece, and Rome.				

跟美国学生一起学英语: 高级版

2 The Chinese was the first civilization to use paper money; later, European countries
adopted the custom.
3 To establish better control over the supply of money in circulation, Congress passed
the Federal Reserve Act in 1923.
4At first, the settlers to the New World used corn, tobacco, and other goods as money.
5 The United States government issued paper money, nicknamed greenbacks, during
the Civil War to pay debts.
III. Complete these sentences.
1. However, carrying around bags of coins eventually became too (burden).
2. When trade and travel expanded beyond the local community, people (seek) a
commodity, or common item, that everyone would accept for payment.
3. The United States Treasury bought all the paper money in circulation.
4. Both times, the paper money became (worth) because there wasn't enough gold or
silver to back the new money.
5. Federal Reserve Banks, established under the new law, were the only banks (authority)
to issue paper money.

参考译文

从以物易物到货币

随着人类文明的发展,以物易物成为越来越 难被使用的经济系统。人们开始使用贝壳、盐和 牛等物品或作为交换单位,或者说作为最早的货 币。渐渐地,货币经济在世界大多数地区取代了 以物易物的交换系统。

当贸易和旅游的范围超出本土后,人们找到 一种能被大家普遍接受的、用来支付的商品或通 用品。块状贵重金属成为交换的标准单位。黄金 和白银是最常用的金属,因为它们耐用而且可被 : 迫使殖民地的移民只能与英格兰人进行贸易往

分割成更小的块状。由贵重金属制成的硬币最早 在土耳其、埃及、希腊和罗马使用。然而, 随身 携带成包的硬币毕竟是很重的负担, 因此一种更 方便的货币形式演变出现。中国是第一个使用纸 币的文明国度,后来,欧洲国家也采取这种方式。

新大陆的货币

到新大陆的第一批定居者并没有带多少钱。 英格兰人禁止殖民地的移民制造货币。这种方式 来。起初,定居者使用玉米、烟草和其他一些商 : 两个时期,纸币变得毫无价值,因为没有足够的 品作为货币。马萨诸塞州是第一个制造自己货币 的殖民地。后来,其他殖民政府也发行了自己的 货币。然而,只有有足够的黄金、白银能够与之 兑换时,纸币才有价值。不久后,在殖民地流通 的纸币多于其所拥有的黄金和白银。由此导致殖 民地的货币失去了价值。

大陆币和美钞

印刷纸币的热情继续给美国人带来问题。美 国独立战争期间,大陆会议发行了大陆币,或称 为政府纸币,以资助战争。内战期间,美国政府 也印发了昵称为"绿背"的纸币偿还欠款。在这

黄金和白银来支持新的货币。在此期间,银行也 被允许发行纸币。

为了确保更好地控制流通中的货币供应量, 1913年国会通过了《联邦储备法》。美国财政部 收购了所有流通中的纸币。根据新法规定而建立 的美国联邦储备银行是唯一被授权发行纸币的银 行。美国联邦储备银行还获得了调控国家货币供 给量的工作。如今,美国联邦储备券,即我们目 前的纸币, 由美国印刷局印制。这些储备券是国 家的法定货币,即用于支付美国境内所有债务的 正式货币。

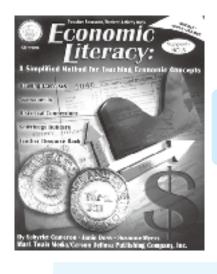
Answer

- I. 1. A 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. C 7. A 8. A
- II. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T
 - III. 1. burdensome 2. sought 3. up 4. worthless
 - 5. authorized

美国纸币上的头像

- 1美元上印的是美国的国父,第1、2届美国总统──乔治·华盛顿;
- 2 美元上是第 3 任美国总统杰斐逊;
- 5美元上是废除美国奴隶制的第16任总统亚伯拉罕·林肯;
- 10 美元上是美国第 1 任财政部长汉密尔顿;
- 20 美元上是第7任美国总统安德鲁·杰克逊;
- 50 美元上是第 18 任总统尤里西斯·格兰特:

百元大钞上的头像不是总统,而是著名科学家、金融家、政治家富兰克林。



9

Factors of Production

生产要素

个人、家庭、企业和政府根据国家资源的利用情况做出经济决策。这些资源被称为生产要素。这些生产要素通常被分成四组:土地、劳动力、资本和企业家。

Types of Resources

Individuals, families, businesses, and the government make economic decisions concerning the use of a nation's resources. These resources are typically categorized¹ into four groups called factors of production: land, labor, capital, and entrepreneurship².

Factors of Production

Land is the environmental resource. It includes all natural resources: land (including anything that grows on or below the soil), water, air, and wildlife. Some natural resources are plentiful, while others are scarce. Resources are classified as renewable³ and nonrenewable. A renewable resource is one that can be replaced, either naturally or by man. A nonrenewable resource is one that



cannot be replaced in a timely manner or at all by nature or by man. Payment for the use of land is called rent.



Labor is the mental and physical efforts of people applied to the production of goods and services. Labor is an important element of production. Workers labor to make goods and provide services. Payment for labor is called wages. In 1913, the Department of Labor was established to enforce laws created to

protect workers against unfair labor practices by businesses.

Capital is the money, buildings, and machinery and equipment used to produce goods and services. Payment for investing capital is called interest. Capitalism is an economic system used by many nations, including the United States. Under this system, private individuals and corporations⁴ own the capital used to produce goods and services.





Entrepreneurship is the risk-taking resource. Entrepreneurs are people who combine labor, land, and capital resources to start businesses. Not every business is successful. Sometimes they fail. Payment for risk-taking or entrepreneurship is called profit. An important characteristic of capitalism is free enterprise⁵: individuals own businesses to make a

profit. The profit motive⁶, the possibility of making money, is the main reason people take the risk of starting a business. Competition between businesses allows consumers to purchase⁷ the best quality product at the lowest price.

🤾 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. categorize ['kætɪgəraɪz] v. 加以类别,分类
- **2.** entrepreneurship [ˌɒntrəprəˈnəːʃɪp] n. <法>企业家,主办人
- **3. renewable** [rɪˈnjuːəbl] *adj*. 可更新的,可恢复的
- **4. corporation** [ˌkɔːpəˈreɪ∫ən] n. [律]社团,法人,公司,企业
- 5. enterprise ['entəpraɪz] n. 企业,事业,计划,事业心,进取心
- 6. motive ['məutɪv] n. 动机,目的 adj. 发动的,运动的
- 7. purchase [ˈpəːtʃəs] vt. 买,购买



Expression 词句荟萃

1. be categorized into 被分类为……

e.g. The books here are categorized into more than 10 types, including economic, artistic,

literary, scientific, and so on.

这些书被分成了十多类,包括经济、艺术、文学、自然等。

This company is categorized into several departments.

这家公司被分成了几个部门。

2. take the risk of doing sth. 冒着做某事的风险

e.g. He took the risk of losing his job by making such a public speech.

他冒着丢掉工作的风险进行了这次演讲。

I took the risk of failing the exam by watching DVD.

我冒着考试不及格的风险看碟。



Exercise 牛刀小试

	_	_		
I. Write th	e correct letter in the	e blank.		
1. Individuals	, families, businesses, and	the government make	e economic decisio	ns the
use of a nati	on's resources.			
A. concern	ing B. concerned	C. concern		(
2. Some natur	ral resources are plentiful,	others are scar	ce.	
A. when	B. while	C. and		
3. Resources	are classified ren	ewable and nonrenew	able.	
A. in	B. as	C. into		
4. A renewabl	e resource is one that can	be replaced, either nat	tural by man	1.
A. or	B. nor	C. and		

5. Labor is the	mental and physical e	fforts of people to the production of goods and
services.		
A. applying	B. apply	C. applied
6. Payment	labor is called wages.	
A. for	B. as	C. to
7. In 1913, the I	Department of Labor w	as established to enforce laws created to protect workers
unfai	r labor practices by bus	sinesses.
A. against	B. from	C. as
8. Capitalism is	an economic system _	by many nations.
A. using	B.use	C.used
9. One of the ch	aracteristics of capitalis	sm free enterprise.
A. are	B.is	C. /
10. The profit m	otive, the possibility of	f making money, is the main reason people the risk
of starting a l	ousiness.	
A. take	B. have	C. make
II. Write tru	e (T) or false (F).	
1 Com	petition between busi	nesses allows consumers to purchase the best quality
product at the	lowest price.	
2 Land	includes all natural res	sources: land (including anything that grows on or below
the soil), water	r, air, and wildlife.	
3 Entre	preneurs are people v	who combine labor, land, and capital resources to start
businesses.		
4 Resou	arces are classified into	renewable, nonrenewable, and half-renewable.
III. Complete	e these sentences.	
1. Resources are	typically categorized	into four groups called factors of production: land, labor,
capital, and	•	
2. Payment for t	he use of land is called	
		forts of people applied to the production of goods and
services.		

跟美国学生一起学英语:高级版

4. Payment	for risk-taking	or entrepreneurshi	p is called
,			

5. Payment for labor is called .

参考译文

资源类型

个人、家庭、企业和政府根据国家资源的利用情况做出经济决策。这些资源被称为生产要素。这些生产要素通常被分成四组:土地、劳动力、资本和企业家。

生产要素

土地是环境资源。它包括所有自然资源:土地(包括任何在土壤以上或以下的资源)、水、空气和野生动物。有些自然资源很丰富,有些则很稀缺。资源分为可再生资源和不可再生资源。可再生资源指可以自发或人为地更替的资源。不可再生资源指短时间内不能或根本不能自发或人为更替的资源。使用土地而支付的报酬即所谓的租金。

劳动力是指在生产商品和提供服务的过程中 人类消耗的脑力和体力的总和。劳动力是重要的 生产要素。工人通过劳动来生产商品和提供服务。 劳动报酬称为工资。1913年,美国劳工部成立, 通过制定实施法律来保护工人,使其免受企业的 不公正待遇。

资本指用于生产商品和提供服务的资金、建筑以及机械、设备的总称。投资资本而获得的收益称为利润。资本主义是包括美国在内的许多国家采用的一种经济制度。在这一制度下,私人和公司拥有用于生产商品和提供服务的资本。

企业家是一种承担风险的资源。企业家指集合劳动力、土地和资本以创业的人。并不是每一家公司都能成功,有时它们也会失败。企业家承担风险所带来的收益称为利润。资本主义的一个重要特点是自由企业制:私人拥有企业以赚取利润。利润动机即赚钱的可能性,是人们承担创业风险的主要原因。企业间的竞争使消费者能够以最低的价格购买到最优质的产品。

"美"事一桩

\supset

生产要素配置组合是经济学的基本问题

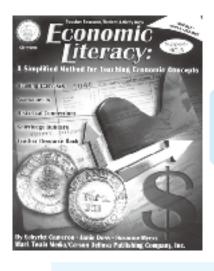
当今世界,经济活动、经济形态形形色色,纷繁复杂,但它们本质上都是生产要素如何配置的问题。第一,一切实体经济都会直接表现为生产要素配置。从生产者的角度看,就是怎样以各种生产要素配置而制造出产品。从流通的角度看,就是怎样通过一定生产要素配置而使产品发生位移,与新的生产者或消费者形成新的组合。从交换的角度看,就是生产者或消费者怎样卖掉自己不再需要的产品(生产要素组合),买回自己需要的产品(生产要素组合)。从分配的角度看,就是怎样把产品(生产要素组合)分配到众多消费者手中。从消费的角度看,就是怎样消费现有产品(生产要素组合),进入下一轮再生产过程。第二,由于货币是随着商品交换的需要而产生的,是要素的价值形态,因此资本的流动、银行资金的流动,实际上是生产要素的流动,它随时可以转换为实物形态进入具体的经济活动之中。如果货币的流动没有实物形态的生产要素来支撑,就形成"泡沫经济"。因此,研究资源,即生产要素的配置,就成为经济学的基本问题。



Answer

- I. 1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. A 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. A
- II. 1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F
- III. 1. entrepreneurship 2. rent 3. physical 4. profit5. wages





10

Supply and Demand

供给与需求

美国的经济是以为消费者提供其所需的商品和服务为基础的。那些购买并使用商品和服务的人叫作消费者。为消费者提供商品和服务的个人和企业叫作生产者。消费者可使用的商品和服务的数量取决于供给和需求。

Supply and Demand

The economy of the United States is based on providing consumers with the goods and services they need and want. Consumers are people who buy and use goods and services. Producers are the people and businesses that provide these goods and services for the consumers. The goods and services made available to consumers are determined by supply and demand.

Supply is the number of items ready for sale. Demand is the number of items consumers want to purchase. If the supply of an item is greater than its demand by consumers, then there is a surplus of that item. A surplus causes the price of the item to decrease. When consumers' demand for the item is greater than the supply, this results in a scarcity². Scarcity causes the price of the item to increase.

Law of Supply and Demand

- 1. The price of an item will go down if the supply increases or the demand for that item decreases.
- The price of an item will go up if the supply decreases or the demand for that item increases.



Early Examples of Supply and Demand



Jamestown Colony prospered³ from tobacco production. Tobacco sold for very high prices in England due to the high demand for the product. This encouraged settlers to plant more tobacco to take advantage of the high prices.

In 1849, gold was discovered in California. People from all over the world rushed to California to get rich in the gold fields. With limited supplies of goods and services available to the prospectors⁴, the prices of items such as food, lodging⁵, and supplies skyrocketed⁶.

After the Civil War, small farms operated by sharecroppers⁷ and tenants⁸ replaced the large plantations. With few resources, the farmers depended on credit to purchase the

goods and services they needed. To repay their debts, farmers grew cotton as a cash crop⁹. Eventually more cotton was produced than that could be sold, and the price of cotton fell drastically.

Today

The cost of energy is a concern for consumers. One form of energy is fossil fuels¹⁰. Oil is a fossil fuel that is nonrenewable. There is a limited supply available. As other nations build more factories, drive more cars, and buy more computers, the rising demand for oil causes increases in oil prices. Future demand by individuals, businesses, and nations for fossil fuels will continue to cause increases in the price of fossil fuels, unless the demand can be satisfied by alternative energy sources.





🧮 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. available [ə'veɪləbl] adj. 可用到的, 有用的
- 2. scarcity ['skeəsɪtɪ] n. 缺乏,不足
- 3. prosper ['prospə] vi. 兴旺,繁荣,成功
- **4. prospector** [pro'spektə(r)] n. 勘探者, 采矿者
- 5. lodge [lod3] vi. 临时住宿,寄宿(某人家)
- 6. skyrocket ['skaɪrʌkɪt] vi. 突升, 猛涨
- 7. **sharecropper** ['[eəˌkropə(r)] n. (尤指美国西南部的)小佃农
- 8. tenant ['tenənt] n. 承租人,房客,租客 v. 出租
- 9. cash crop 商品作物
- 10. fossil fuel 矿物燃料, 化石燃料



Expression 词句荟萃

1. provide sb. with sth. /provide sth. for sb. 为某人提供某物

e.g. The couple provided the guests with plenty of delicious dishes./

The couple provided plenty of delicious food for the guests.

那对夫妇为客人提供了丰富的菜肴。

The professor will provide data for his students.

教授将给他的学生们提供数据。

2. take advantage of 利用

e.g. He took advantage of local natural resources setting up his own factory.

他利用当地的自然资源建起了他的工厂。

Bill takes advantage of video promoting his project.

比尔利用视频推广他的项目。

3. unless 除非

e.g. I will not go there unless Elizabeth goes too.

除非伊丽莎白去,我才去。

I sleep with the window open unless it's really very cold.

我总是开着窗户睡觉,除非天气非常冷才关上窗户。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the co	orrect letter in	the blank.
1. The economy of	of the United State	es is based on providing consumers the goods and
services they ne	ed and want.	
A. to	B. in	C. with
2. Producers are t	he people and bus	inesses that provide these goods and services the
consumers.		
A. for	B. to	C. with
3. The goods and	l services made a	available consumers are determined by supply and
demand.		
A. to	B. as	C. in
4. Supply is the m	umber of items rea	dysale.
A. to	B. for	C.in
5. The price of a	n item will go _	if the supply increases or the demand for that item
decreases.		
A./	B. up	C. down
6. The price of a	n item will go	if the supply decreases or the demand for that item
increases.		
A. down	B. up	C./
7. Tobacco sold fo	or very high prices	in England due the high demand for the product.
A. to	B. for	C. in
8. This encourage	d settlers to plant 1	more tobacco to take advantage the high prices.
A. of	B. in	C. for
		~

跟美国学生一起学英语: 高级版

9 Eventually mo	ore cotton was prod	uced than that	be sold, and the price of cotton fell
drastically.	ne conton was prod		se sord, and the price of cotton ferr
-	D	C11	
A. would		C. could	
	nergy is a concern_	consumer	s.
A. for	B. to	C. as	
II. Write true	e(T) or false (F)).	
1 In 1	849, gold was disco	overed in California	
2 Afte	er the Civil War,	large plantations r	replaced the small farms operated by
sharecroppers a	and tenants.		
3. Oi	l is a fossil fuel that	t is renewable.	
			and nations for fossil fuels will continue
	-		ne demand can be satisfied by alternative
energy sources	_		
energy sources	•		
III. Complete	these sentence	S.	
1. is	the number of iten	ns ready for sale.	
		s consumers want to	purchase.
			consumers, then there is a of
that item.	r un nom is grower	than its demand by	or a second control of the control o
	ana' damaan difan tha	itam is amostan than	the county this regults in a
		•	the supply, this results in a
	s the price of the ite		
	urces, the farmers of	depended on	to purchase the goods and services they
needed.			

参考译文

供给与需求

美国的经济是以为消费者提供其所需的商品和服务为基础的。那些购买并使用商品和服务的人叫作消费者。为消费者提供其商品和服务的个人和企业叫作生产者。消费者可使用的商品和服务的数量取决于供给和需求。

供给是指可出售的商品的数量。需求是指消费者愿意购买的商品的数量。如果一件商品的供给大于其需求,则会出现商品剩余。商品剩余造成其价格下降。当消费者对一件商品的需求大于其供给时,则导致商品短缺。商品短缺造成其价格上涨。

供求法则

- 1. 当供给增加或需求减少时,商品的价格将下降。
- 2. 当供给减少或需求增加时,商品的价格将上涨。

供求关系的早期例子

詹姆斯顿殖民地的经济繁荣于烟草的生产。 因为对烟草的强烈需求,该产品在英国的售价极 高。这种现象鼓舞殖民者种植更多的烟草,以从 其高价中获利。

1849 年,加利福尼亚州发现金矿。从世界各地来的淘金者涌入加州,想通过金矿致富。由于淘金者所能获得的商品和服务有限,致使食物、住房和供给物等的价格猛涨。

南北战争过后,由佃农和承租人经营的小农 场替代了大规模的种植园经济。稀缺的资源使得 农场主依靠贷款来购买所需的商品和服务。为了 偿还他们的欠款,农场主将棉花作为一种商品作 物种植。最终,棉花供过于求,其价格急剧下降。

现今

消费者对能源的消耗感到担忧。矿物燃料是能源的一种。石油是一种矿物燃料,属于不可再生资源。它的供给量是有限的。由于别的国家建造更多的工厂、驾驶更多的汽车、购买更多的电脑,对石油与日俱增的需求导致其价格上涨。个人、企业、国家对矿物燃料的未来需求将致使其价格继续上涨,除非这种需求能够被其他能源替代品所满足。

Answer

- I. 1. C 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. A 9. C 10. A
- II. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T
- III. 1. Supply 2. Demand 3. surplus 4. scarcity 5. increase 6. credit



科技生活

化石燃料(Fossil Fuel)

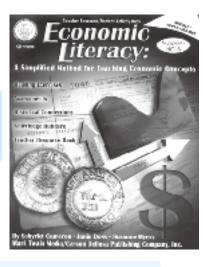
化石燃料是指煤炭、石油、天然气等这些埋藏在地下、不能再生的燃料资源。化石燃料中按 埋藏能量的数量顺序分别有煤炭类、石油、油页岩、天然气和油砂。

煤炭是埋藏在地下的植物受压力和地热的作用,经过几千万年乃至几亿年的炭化过程,释放 出水分、二氧化碳、甲烷等气体后,含氧量减少而形成的,含碳量非常丰富。由于地质条件和进 化程度不同,含碳量不同,从而发热量也就不同。煤炭按发热量大小顺序分为无烟煤、烟煤和褐 炭等。煤炭在地球上分布较为广泛,不是集中在某一产地。

石油是水中堆积的微生物残骸,在高压的作用下形成的碳氢化合物。石油经过精制后可得到 汽油、煤油、柴油和重油。石油在地球上分布不均,约 80% 可以开采的石油储藏于中东。油页 岩是一种含可燃有机质的沉积岩,含灰分过多,多半不能自燃。油砂是含重质油 4%~20% 的沉积 砂。油页岩和油砂在美洲大陆偏多。

Economic Systems

11



经济体系

每个国家必须选择一种经济体制来分配资源。一共有三种基本的经济体制,分别为传统型经济、计划 经济以及市场经济。

Three Basic Economic Questions

The needs and wants of individuals, families, businesses, and nations for goods and services are unlimited¹. The resources to satisfy these needs and wants are limited; therefore every nation is faced with answering these questions.

- ◆ 1. What goods and services will be produced?
- ◆2. Who will be responsible for producing the goods and services?
- ◆3. How will the goods and services be distributed to consumers?

There is no absolute correct way of allocating² scarce resources. A particular method might prove to be ideal in one situation but less satisfactory in other situations. Each nation must select an economic system to allocate resources. There are three basic economic systems: traditional,

command³, and market.

Methods of Allocation

In a traditional economic system, economic decisions are based on a society's customs⁴, culture, and way of life. Hunting, farming, gathering, and making things by hand



are methods used to meet the people's needs under this system. Tradition assumes that things do not change, and if it worked well in the past, it will work as well in the future.

In a command economic system, the government makes economic decisions. The government owns most of the industries. In a command economy, it is important for producers to meet the government's assigned production quotas⁵, which are the amounts of goods and services to produce. Prices are set by the government and do not change according to supply and demand.

The market economic system is the method used in the United States. In our "free market system", customers and producers decide what to produce, how much to produce, and the worth of goods and services. Entrepreneurs or business owners seeing an opportunity for profits will produce and market goods or services. If entrepreneurs do a good job in anticipating⁶ the desires of the consumers, then they will make



profits⁷. If the entrepreneurs do a poor job, there will be a loss in profit.



🧱 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1.unlimited** [ʌnˈlɪmɪtɪd] *adj*. 无限的, 无约束的
- **2.allocate** [ˌæləʊˈkeɪt] ν. 分配,安置
- 3.command [kəˈmɑːnd] n. 命令,掌握,司令部 v. 命令,支配
- 4. custom [ˈkʌstəm] n. 习惯,风俗,海关
- 5. quota [ˈkwəʊtə] n. 配额, 限额
- 6. anticipate [æn'tɪsɪpeɪt] vt. 预期,期望,过早使用,占先
- 7. **profit** ['profit] *n*. 利润, 益处, 收益 *vi*. 得益, 利用 *vt*. 有益于, 有利于



Expression 词句荟萃

1. be faced with 面对

e.g. The factory is faced with the threat of going bankrupt.

这个工厂面临即将倒闭的威胁。

Jack is faced with breaking up with his girlfriend.

杰克可能要和女友分手。

2. It is important for sb. to do sth. 对某人来说做某事很重要

e.g. It is important for the teachers to vary his or her tones when giving the lectures, in order to attract students' attention well.

对老师来说,讲课时用抑扬顿挫的语气十分重要,那样可以更好地吸引学生的注意力。

It is very important for the children to form good habits.

让孩子们养成良好的习惯十分重要。

3. according to 根据

e.g. According to the regulation of this high school, students cannot wear long hair.

根据这个中学的规章规定, 学生不得留长发。

According to the lady's description, the policemen have more confidence in capturing that criminal.

根据那位女士的描述,警察更有把握抓住那个罪犯了。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.

1. In a traditional economic system, economic decisions are based _____a society's customs, culture, and way of life.

A. on

B. at

C. in

2. Hunting, farming,	gathering, and ma	iking things by hand are methods used to
the people's needs u	under this system.	
A. have	B. meet	C. met
3. Tradition assumes	that things do not	change, and if it worked in the past, it will work
as well in the future	e.	
A. well	B. good	C. better
4. How will the good	s and services be d	istributed consumers?
A. to	B. in	C. for
5. Entrepreneurs or b	ousiness owners se	eeing an opportunity profits will produce and
market goods or ser	rvices.	
A. to	B. as	C. for
6. Prices are set	_ the government a	and do not change according to supply and demand.
A. by	B. in	C. with
7. A particular metho	od might prove	ideal in one situation but less satisfactory in other
situations.		
A. to be	B. be	C./
II. Write true (T	or false (F).	
1 In a tradi	tional economic s	system, economic decisions are based on a society's
customs, culture, a	nd way of life.	
2 If entrepre	neurs do a good jo	b in anticipating the desires of the consumers, then they
will make profits.		
3 In a com	mand economy, it	is important for producers to meet the consumer's
assigned productio	n quotas, which ar	e the amounts of goods and services to produce.
4 There is no	absolute correct v	vay of allocating scarce resources.
III. Complete the	ese sentences.	
1. There are three bas	sic economic system	ns: traditional,, and market.
2. In a command eco	onomic system, the	e makes economic decisions. The government
owns most of the in	dustries.	
3. Entrepreneurs or b	ousiness owners _	(see) an opportunity for profits will produce and

market goods or services.

- 4. Tradition assumes that things do not change, and if it worked well in the past, it will work as _____ in the future.
- 5. Prices are set by the government and do not change according ____ supply and demand.

参考译文

三个基本经济问题

个人、家庭、企业、国家对于商品和服务的需求是无限的,但满足这些需求的资源是有限的。因此每个国家都面临着回答这些问题:

- ◆ 1. 将生产和提供什么样的商品和服务?
- ◆ 2. 谁来负责生产、提供这些商品和服务?
- ◆ 3. 这些商品和服务将如何分配给消费者?

没有一种完全正确的分配有限资源的方式。 某一种方式或许在一种情况下很理想,但在其他 情况下就不那么尽如人意。每个国家必须选择一 种经济体制来分配资源。一共有三种基本的经济 体制,分别为传统型经济、计划经济以及市场经济。

分配方式

在传统的经济体系中,经济决策基于一个社

会的风俗习惯、文化和生活方式。狩猎、耕作、 采集、手工制造是在这种体制下满足人们需求的 方式。传统观念认为事物不会改变,如果它在过 去运作得很好,将来也会如此。

在计划经济体制下,国家政府制定经济决策。 大部分工业归政府所有。在计划经济下,对于生产者来说,满足政府分配的生产定额(即生产、提供的商品和服务的数量)很重要。价格由政府制定,而且不会根据供求关系的变化而改变。

美国的经济体制是市场经济体制。在我们的"自由经济体制"下,顾客和生产者决定生产什么、生产多少以及商品和服务的价格。企业家或企业所有者看准获利的机会,生产并出售商品和服务。如果企业家能够成功地预期消费者需求,那么,他们将会获利。然而,如果企业家做出错误的预测,则会亏损。

"美"事一桩

\supset

市场经济的起源

市场经济时代是以工业为主导的时代,人们已经看到了现代工业文明在改善人类生活中所取得的巨大成就,今天许多发展中国家都致力于积极推进国家的工业化。但历史似乎总在与人类为难,从采集开始直到封建农业,在各个历史阶段,"不该来的"都来了,而由农业到工业,"该来的"却迟迟不来。这是为什么呢?

一般来说,工业是从农业中分离并独立出来的,要揭开工业文明和市场经济的起源之谜,只能从农业经济的发展中着手探索。如前所述,还在奴隶农业时期,就已产生了最早的手工业和商品经济萌芽。到农业经济时代末期,即封建农业时期,以农具制作和农产品加工为主的手工业和商品经济已经变得相当发达,出现了不少专门的手工业作坊和商店。为了满足不断扩大的市场需求,这些作坊和商店便不断扩大经营规模,其基本做法有两种,一是实行雇工经营,二是不断改进工具,最终导致了资本主义机器大工业的形成。

这里的关键在于商品经济能否发展起来。从本质上来讲,商品经济就是市场经济,而市场经济则必然导致以雇工经营和机器大生产为主要特征的资本主义经济制度。但商品经济的发展与自给自足的小农经济是对立的,它一方面刺激小农家庭增加消费,另一方面又在竞争中竭力排挤家庭手工业,减少小农家庭收入,同时还以种种胁迫利诱手段,吸引家庭劳动力外流。商品经济与小农经济的对立常常使农户收入减少,并对封建统治形成直接威胁,因而必然引起小农的竭力抵抗和封建统治者的重重阻挠。但"青山遮不住,毕竟东流去",在西欧地区,商品经济冲破了相对薄弱的封建势力的阻挡,蓬勃发展起来。从此,人类便进入了以工业为主导的市场经济历史发展新阶段。

Answer

- I. 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. C 6. A 7. A
- II. 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T
- III. 1. command 2. government 3. seeing 4. well 5. to



Gross Domestic Product

Economic Literacy: 1 Supplied Welling for Further Francis Concepts For a Live Concepts Correct for wearing Correct for a Live Concepts For a Live Concepts By Colorie Concepts for a few forms of Concepts, for a live Concepts for a live Conce

国内生产总值

国家每年出台一份经济报告,政府计算出当年的经济增长指数,并将其与过去几年的增长相比较。政府利用这些信息来保持经济健康和稳定增长。

Public vs. Private Goods and Services

Goods and services can be categorized¹ as private or public. Private goods and services are provided by businesses and are sold to consumers. Some private goods include books, cars, clothes, computers, games, and so on. A few businesses that provide services include hair salons, theaters, hospitals, and construction companies. The government provides public goods and services. Some public goods and services include police protection, national defense², education, and construction and repair of bridges and highways.



GNP3 vs. GDP4

Each year, the nation gets an economic report card. The government calculates⁵ the growth of the economy and compares it to the economic growth of past years. The government uses the information to keep the economy healthy and growing.

Before WWI, the United States did not have a system for computing the economic performance of the nation. No government or private agency was responsible for collecting the data needed to calculate the value of all private and public goods and services produced in a year, or the gross national product (GNP). In the 1930s, Simon Kuznets, an American economist, developed a method for measuring the yearly economic growth of a nation. In 1971, Kuznets was awarded the Nobel Prize in Economics.

Today, many economists believe using the gross domestic product (GDP) is a better measure of economic performance than the GNP. The GNP measures the total amount of money spent on private and public goods and services within the United States.

Using GDP Figures



The Bureau⁶ of Economic Analysis is the agency in the United States Department of Commerce that is responsible for collecting the data used

to figure the GDP. The government uses the information to determine which phase of the business cycle the economy is in: expansion,

recession, or depression. Economists also use the GDP figures to compare the economic performance of the United States with the economic performance of other countries.

Three major components used in calculating the GDP are household⁷ purchases of consumer goods and services, government purchases of goods and services, and purchases of capital goods⁸ by businesses: buildings, machinery⁹ and equipment.



Nocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. categorize ['kætɪgəraɪz] v. 加以类别, 分类
- 2. defense [dɪˈfens] n. (D-)(美国)防卫, 保卫
- 3. GDP (Gross Domestic Product) 国内生产总值
- 4. GNP (Gross National Product) 国民生产总值
- **5. calculate** ['kælkjʊleɪt] v. 计算, 考虑, 计划, 打算
- **6. bureau** ['bjʊərəʊ] *n*. 办公桌, 衣柜; <美>局, 办公署
- 7. household ['haushəuld] n. 一家人,家庭,家族
- 8. capital goods 资本货物(指生产商品所需的机器、厂房等)
- 9. machinery [məˈʃiːnərɪ] n. [总称] 机器, 机械



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. compare...to... 把······比作, 比喻为······
 - e.g. People often compare the landscape to a beautiful drawing.

人们常常把风景比作美丽的图画。

The girl's face is always compared to a red apple in China.

在中国,人们常常把小女孩的脸比作红苹果。

- 2. be responsible for 对……负责
 - e.g. The government should be responsible for the death in the accident.

政府应该为事故中的遇难者负责。

Parents should be responsible for their children.

家长应该对孩子负责。

- 3. compare...with... 将……与……比较
 - e.g. It is not reasonable to compare the command economy with market economy.

将集中管理制经济与计划经济相比较是不合理的。

Jane likes to compare her husband with her parents.

珍妮喜欢将她的丈夫与她的父母相比较。

Exercise 牛刀小试

		$\overline{}$
I. Write the corr	ect letter in the	e blank.
1. Goods and service	es can be categorize	ed private or public.
A. as	B. in	C. to
2. The government of	calculates the grow	rth of the economy and compares it the economic
growth of past year	ars.	
A. to	B. with	C. as
3. No government of	or private agency	was responsible collecting the data needed to
calculate the value	of all private and p	public goods and services produced in a year.
A. to	B. for	C. in

4. Before WWI, the United States did not have a system computing the economic
performance of the nation.
A. to B. in C. for
5. The GNP measures the total amount of money spent private and public goods and
services within the United States.
A. on B. in C. for
6. In 1971, Kuznets was the Nobel Prize in Economics.
A. awarded B. rewarded C. accepted
7. Simon Kuznets, an American economist, developed a method for measuring the
economic growth of a nation.
A. year B. yearly C. yearing
II. Write true (T) or false (F).
1 Today, many economists believe using the gross domestic product (GDP) is a better
measure of economic performance than the GNP.
2 In 1975, Kuznets was awarded the Nobel Prize in Economics.
3 Goods and services can be categorized as private or public.
4 In the 1930s, Simon Kuznets, an American economist, developed a method for
measuring the yearly economic growth of a nation.
5 Three major components used in calculating the GDP are household purchases of
consumer goods and services, government purchases of goods and services, and purchases of
capital goods by businesses: buildings, machinery and equipment.
III. Complete these sentences.
1. Private goods and services are provided by businesses and are sold to
2. The government uses the information to determine which phase of the business cycle the
economy is in: expansion,, or depression.
3. A few businesses that provide services include hair salons, theaters, hospitals, and
companies.
4. Some public goods and services police protection, national defense, education, and
construction and repair of bridges and highways.
5. The government uses the information to keep the economy healthy and

参考译文

公共与私人的物品和服务

物品和服务可以被分为私有和公有。私人物品和服务由企业提供,并销售给消费者。私人物品包括书籍、汽车、服装、计算机和游戏等。少数企业提供服务,包括发廊、影剧院、医院和建筑公司。政府提供公共物品和服务,包括治安、国防以及桥梁和公路的建设与维护。

国民生产总值与国内生产总值

国家每年出台一份经济报告,政府计算出当年的经济增长指数,并将其与过去几年的增长相比较。政府利用这些信息来保持经济健康和稳定增长。

第一次世界大战之前,美国没有衡量国家经济状况的系统。没有政府或私人机构负责计算并收集一年中私人与公共物品及劳务的总价值,即国民生产总值(GNP)。20世纪30年代,美国经

济学家西蒙·库兹涅茨制定了一套衡量国家年经济增长的方法。1971年,库兹涅茨被授予诺贝尔经济学奖。

如今,许多经济学家认为,衡量经济状况采 用国内生产总值(GDP)比国民生产总值更好。 国民生产总值衡量在美国境内,所有花费在私人 与公共物品和劳务上的款项总额。

国内生产总值数据的使用

经济分析局是隶属于美国商务部的机构,负 责收集用于计算国内生产总值的数据。政府利用 这些信息确定经济正处于商业周期的哪个阶段: 扩张、衰退还是萧条。经济学家还使用国内生产 总值数据来比较美国与其他国家的经济状况。

国内生产总值的三个主要组成部分是:家庭对商品及服务的购买;政府对商品及服务的购买;政府对商品及服务的购买;企业对资本货物,即厂房、机器、设备的投资。

Answer

- I. 1. A 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. A 7. B
- II. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T
- III. 1. consumers 2. recession 3. construction 4. include 5. growing



"美"事一桩

西蒙·库兹涅茨(Simon Kuznets)

西蒙·库兹涅茨于 1901 年 4 月 30 日出生在俄国乌克兰哈尔科夫市的一个皮毛商人家庭,父亲亚伯拉罕·库兹涅茨和母亲波琳·弗里德曼都是犹太人。在西蒙·库兹涅茨 6 岁的时候,他的父亲移居美国。西蒙·库兹涅茨本人说,他从那时候起就对经济学产生了浓厚的兴趣,相信经济学是研究一切社会问题的基础。

1922年,西蒙·库兹涅茨进入哥伦比亚大学攻读经济学。他于 1923年获得文科学士学位,1924年获得文科硕士学位,1926年获得博士学位。1927年,西蒙・库兹涅茨进入米切尔(W.C.Mitchell)教授主持的国民经济研究局(NBER),并在那里一直工作到1961年。

西蒙·库兹涅茨在西方经济学界十分活跃,他是美国经济学会、美国统计学会、美国哲学学会、美国科学促进协会、国际统计学会会员,美国经济史学会、英国皇家统计学会的名誉会员,瑞典皇家科学院院士,英国科学院通信院士,担任过美国经济学会会长和美国统计学会会长等职。他还获得普林斯顿大学、宾夕法尼亚大学、哈佛大学、耶路撒冷希伯来大学名誉博士学位。

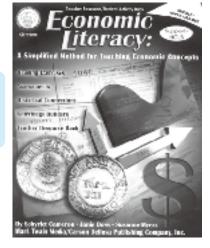
20世纪20年代以来,西蒙·库兹涅茨主要从事下述领域的研究。

- (1)经济周期。主要著作有《生产和价格的长期运动》(1930年)、《工业和贸易的季节性波动》(1934年)、《零售和批发贸易的周期波动》(1962年)等。
- (2)国民收入核算。主要著作有《国民收入和资本形成》(1938年)、《1919—1938年的国民收入及其构成》(1941年)、《战争时期的国民产值》(1945年)、《国民收入:发现的概述》(1946年)、《1869年以来的国民产值》(1946年)等。
- (3)经济增长。主要著作有《1870年以来美国国民收入的长期变化》(1951年)、《各国经济增长的定量方面》(1956年)、《关于经济增长的六篇演讲》(1959年)、《现代经济增长:速率、结构和扩展》(1966年)、《各国经济增长:总产值和生产结构》(1971年)等。

西蒙·库兹涅茨在上述研究领域中都做出了杰出的贡献。他在经济周期研究中所提出的为期 20 年的经济周期,被西方经济学界称为"库兹涅茨周期"。他在国民收入核算研究中提出了国民收入及其组成部分的定义和计算方法,被经济学家们誉为"美国的 GNP 之父"。他对经济增长的分析,被西方经济学界认为揭示了各发达国家一个多世纪的经济增长过程,并提出了许多深刻的见解。据说,西蒙·库兹涅茨的研究成果被引用的次数,在西方经济学界的经济学家和统计学家中无人能与之相比。正因为这些,在 1971 年诺贝尔经济学奖的评选过程中,瑞典皇家科学院从 100 多个提名所选出的 10 个候选人中,最后确定了西蒙·库兹涅茨为获奖者。

Income Taxes

13



所得税

所得税是对个人和企业每年取得的收入征收的一种税。城市、州及联邦政府征收此税。政府已设立了 代扣所得税制度,使支付和征收个人所得税更加方便。

The Invention of Income Tax

The first federal income tax was collected in 1862 to help pay the cost of the United States Civil War. Prior¹ to the Civil War, the U.S. government did not tax income; instead, it relied on revenues² from tariffs³, or taxes on imported goods. When the war came to an end, the tax was repealed⁴. The government returned to using tariffs and taking items such as beer, tobacco, and even chewing gum⁵ to raise revenue. Congress realized these types of taxes were not reliable sources of revenue. The Sixteen A



types of taxes were not reliable sources of revenue. The Sixteen Amendment, passed in 1913, gave the government the power to levy⁶, or impose and collect, income tax.

Withholding⁷ Tax

An income tax is a tax on the money an individual or business earns each year. Cities, states, and/or the federal government collect the tax. The government has set up a system of tax withholding to make the payment and collection of personal income taxes more convenient for taxpayers⁸. The employers are responsible for subtracting⁹ a certain amount of money from each employee's paycheck¹⁰ and sending it to the appropriate governments.

Pay Day

People are given a pay stub each time they are paid. The pay stub shows details such as how much money has been earned and how much tax has been deducted¹¹ from the paychecks. The pay stub is a way for the employee to have a record of earnings and deductions.

Filing Tax Returns

Taxpayers are legally responsible for preparing and submitting a tax return to the Internal Revenue Service (IRS¹²). Many people send their tax returns through the post office. An increasing number of taxpayers use electronic filing because it is faster and more convenient. When the IRS receives the tax return, it is checked for accuracy. Tax evasion¹³, trying to avoid paying taxes, is illegal.



As a result of the withholding of taxes, some taxpayers may still owe income tax at the end of the year, while other taxpayers may be entitled¹⁴ to a tax refund. This depends on whether the employer has withheld too little or too much money from an employee's paycheck.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1. prior** ['praɪə] *adj*. 优先的,在前的 *n*. 预先
- **2. revenue** ['revənju:] *n*. 收入, 国家的收入, 税收
- 3. tariff ['tærɪf] n. 关税
- **4. repeal** [rɪ'pi:l] ν 废止,撤销,否定,放弃,废除 n. 废除,撤销
- 5. chewing gum □香糖
- **6. levy** ['levi] *n*. 征收,征税,征兵 *v*. 征收,征集,征用

- 7. withholding [wɪðˈhəʊldɪŋ] n. 扣交
- 8. taxpayer ['tæksˌpeɪə] n. 纳税人
- 9. subtract [səbˈtrækt] v. (~from)减去,减
- 10. paycheck ['pert[ek] n. 付薪水的支票, 薪水
- 11. deduct [dɪ'dʌkt] v. 减除,扣除
- 12. IRS Internal Revenue Service 美国国税局
- 13. evasion [ɪˈveɪʒən] n. 逃避,借口
- **14. entitle** [ɪn'taɪtl] *vt.* 给……权利(或资格),给……题名,给……称号 *v.* 授权



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. prior to 在前,居先
 - e.g. This task is prior to all others.

这项任务比其他任务都重要。

My appointment to the post was prior to yours.

我任命该职在你之前。

- 2. rely on 依靠, 依赖
 - e.g. Charities rely on voluntary donations.

慈善事业依靠自愿捐款。

Nowadays we rely increasingly on computers for help.

现今我们越来越依赖电脑来帮助。

- 3. be entitled to 有……的资格, 有权
 - e.g. He is entitled to a pension.

他有领退休金的资格。

All are entitled to an equal start.

所有人都享有平等起步的权利。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the corre	ect letter in th	e blank.
1. Prior the C	Civil War, the U.S	. government did not tax income.
A. for	B. with	C. to
2. It relied rev	enues from tariffs	s, or taxes on imported goods.
A. in	B. on	C. with
3. When the war cam	e an end, t	he tax was repealed.
A. to	B. into	C. as
4. The pay stub show	vs details such _	how much money has been earned and how much
tax has been deduct	ted from the paye	hecks.
A. as	B. for	C. of
5. When the IRS rece	ives the tax retur	n, it is checked accuracy.
A. with	B. to	C. for
6. As a result of the w	vithholding of tax	es, some taxpayers may still owe income tax at the end of
the year, while other	er taxpayers may	be to a tax refund.
A. titled	B. entitled	C. assigned
7. The government	has set a	system of tax withholding to make the payment and
collection of person	nal income taxes	more convenient for taxpayers.
A. to	B. up	C. into
8. This dependsemployee's payche		aployer has withheld too little or too much money from an
A. on	B. at	C. as
9. The pay stub is a w	vay the emp	loyee to have a record of earnings and deductions.
A. for	B. in	C. at
10. The employers a	re responsible _	subtracting a certain amount of money from each
employee's paych	eck and sending i	t to the appropriate governments.
A. for	B. of	C. at
	~ -	

II. Write true (T) or false (F).
1 The Sixteen Amendment, passed in 1933, gave the government the power to levy, or
impose and collect, income tax.
2 An income tax is a tax on the money an individual or business earns every two year.
3 Tax evasion, trying to avoid paying taxes, is illegal.
4 As a result of the withholding of taxes, some taxpayers may still owe income tax at
the end of the year, while other taxpayers may be entitled to a tax refund.
5 The first federal income tax was collected in 1862 to help pay the cost of the United
States Civil War.
III. Complete these sentences.
1. Taxpayers are legally responsible from preparing and submitting a tax return to the Internal
Revenue (IRS).
2. Tax, trying to avoid paying taxes, is illegal.
3. The government returned to using tariffs and taking items such as beer, tobacco, and even
chewing to raise revenue.
4. The employers are responsible for subtracting a certain amount of money from each
paycheck and sending it to the appropriate governments.

参考译文

所得税的发明

联邦最早于 1862 年开始征收所得税,用来 : 重新征收关税, 并采用了针对啤酒、烟草甚至口 帮助支付美国内战的费用。在内战之前,美国政 : 香糖的税目以增加收入。国会意识到这种税收来 府没有征收所得税,而是依靠关税或进口货物的 : 源不可靠。1913年通过了第十六修正案,赋予政

税收收入。战争结束后,所得税被废除了。政府 : 府征税的权力,即强制征收所得税的权力。

代扣所得税

所得税是对个人和企业每年取得的收入征收的一种税。城市、州及联邦政府征收此税。政府已设立了代扣所得税制度,使支付和征收个人所得税更加方便。雇主有责任扣除每位员工工资中的一定金额,并把它送交相应的政府。

发薪日

人们每一次取得收入的同时也拿到了工资单。工资单显示工资扣除的细节,如挣了多少钱、 多少税款已被从工资中扣除。工资单为员工提供 了记录工资收入和扣除的方式。

报税

纳税人负有准备报税表并将其提交给美国国税局(IRS)的法律责任。许多人通过邮局发出报税表。而越来越多纳税人采用电子方式报税,因为它更加方便快捷。美国国税局收到报税表后会检查它的准确性。偷税、逃税都是非法的。

代扣税款的结果是,有些纳税人在年底可能 还欠所得税,而其他纳税人可享受退税。这取决 于雇主从雇员的薪水中扣缴的多少。

"美"事一桩

富人是个税缴纳的主体

美国的富人是个人所得税缴纳的主体,个税收入的六成来自富有和高收入的人群。

美国根据个人收入情况逐步提高税率,以减少低收入者的负担,控制高收入者的收入过快增长。 其最基本的原则是收入多缴税多,收入低的可以先缴税后退税。美国在收入方面的规定也相当复杂, 不仅考虑个人的实际收入,还十分重视家庭其他成员尤其是儿童的因素。

日本:对个税设立了不少扣除项目

日本税制中,对于个人所得税设立了不少扣除项目。总的来说有两类:一类是对人的扣除,一类是对事的扣除。前者的主要目的在于照顾低收入者的生活需要,它具体分为基础扣除、配偶扣除(日本很多女性不工作)、抚养扣除、残疾扣除和老人扣除等。而对事的扣除,主要是为了应对某些突发事件,具体有社会保险费的扣除等。

这就是说,尽管很多日本人年收入相同,但如果抚养的子女人数不同,需要赡养的老人数量 不同,需交纳的所得税税款也就有很大不同。

德国:收入越多,缴个税越高

根据德国法律,所有在德国的常驻居民、在德国的非常驻但收入高于德国平均水平的外国居民,

都要缴纳个人所得税,所得税因个人收入多少缴纳的比例不等,收入越多的,缴税比例越高。

德国对不同家庭情况采取不同的个人所得税起征点。但是有几种情形可以减少个人收入所得税,包括:已婚家庭但拥有 18 岁以下子女,或者子女在 27 岁以下但仍在上学的以及子女没有收入的;(向德国机构捐助政治款项或者慈善款项;不可抗拒的特殊高额开支(如生病)等。

在德国,所有有工作的人都要参加失业、退休和医疗保险,这三大保险是由雇主和雇员平分的。 工资收入不包括雇主为雇员缴纳的三大保险金,雇员缴纳的三大保险金属于个人所得税涵盖的范围, 但这部分个人所得税有一个最高限额。



Answer

- I. 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. B 8. A 9. A 10. A
- II. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T
- III. 1. Service 2. evasion 3. gum 4. employee's



A Humor 休闲时刻



股市幽默之扁鹊见蔡桓公

扁鹊见蔡桓公,立有间,扁鹊曰:"股市将大跌,不抛将恐回吐利润。"

桓侯回: "寡人不抛。"

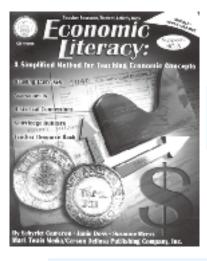
扁鹊出,桓侯曰:"空头之好测顶以为神。"

居十日,扁鹊复见,曰: "股市将大跌,不抛将恐损失手续费。"桓侯不应,扁鹊出,桓侯又不悦。

居十日,扁鹊复见,曰:"股市将大跌,不抛将恐套牢。"桓侯又不应,扁鹊出,桓侯又不悦。

居十日,扁鹊望桓侯而还走。

居五日,股市果大跌,桓侯忙拨扁鹊手机,回应曰:您呼叫的用户已关机,请稍候再拨。桓侯遂套牢。



14

Banking

银行业

银行为人们提供一个安全的地方去存放他们的资金。早期,人们将他们的硬币交给那些将硬币储存在保险箱的货币兑换商和放债的人。随后,银行的概念从在街边长凳上进行银行业务的意大利传播到其他欧洲国家。

Early Banking

Banks provide people with a safe place to store their money. In early times, people left their coins with money-exchangers¹ and moneylenders² who stored the coins in their strongboxes³. Later, the idea of banks spread from Italy, where banking was conducted on city street benches, to other European countries. In the 1600s, English goldsmiths⁴ acted as bankers. They stored coins for people in their vaults⁵. The goldsmiths issued receipts for the



deposits⁶. The receipts or notes were more convenient than coins to carry, so people began using them as money.

United States Banking System

In 1791, the United States Congress established the First Bank of the United States. Many states and individuals also owned and operated banks. During this "Free Banking Era" each bank issued its own bank notes or paper money. Many of the banks printed too much paper money, which led to several financial panics and distrust in the banking system. In 1913, Congress established the Federal Reserve note as the only legal U.S. currency. During the Great Depression of the 1930s, many banks failed. In March of 1933, President Franklin D. Roosevelt ordered a

nation-wide bank holiday, the closing of all banks. This stopped people from trying to convert their bank deposits into gold or currency. Roosevelt believed that it would provide time for the "rehabilitation" of our banking facilities." Banks that were financially sound were allowed to reopen. The Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) was created by the United States Congress to help restore faith in the banking industry by protecting depositors' money.

Banking Today

Today, banks offer a wide variety of services to customers. Money can be deposited, or stored, at banks in a variety of accounts. Checking accounts⁸ allow depositors to withdraw⁹ their money through ATMs, debit cards, automatic payment withdrawals, and/or writing checks. Depositors must have enough money in their accounts to cover the money withdrawn. If not, the depositor is penalized¹⁰ with an overdraft¹¹ fee, or charge. Savings accounts¹² allow depositors to store their money at the bank. In return, the bank will pay the depositor



interest, or a fee, for the use of their money. The bank uses the deposited money to make loans to customers. The customers will pay the bank interest on the loan. Also, a bank makes money by charging fees for checking accounts, ATM withdraws, and overdrafts.

🥰 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. exchanger [ɪks't∫eɪndʒə] n. 交换器(机,剂),换(放,散)热器
- 2. moneylender ['mʌnɪlendə(r)] n. (尤指经营典当的)放债者
- 3. strongbox ['stronboks] n. 保险箱
- **4. goldsmith** [ˈgəʊldsmɪθ] *n*. 金匠
- **5. vault** [vo:lt] *n*. 拱顶,银行的金库
- 6. deposit [dɪˈpɒzɪt] n. 存款,押金,保证金 vt. 存放
- 7. rehabilitation ['ri:(h)ə,bɪlɪ'teɪ∫ən] n. 复原

跟美国学生一起学英语:高级版

- 8. checking account 活期账户
- 9. withdraw [wið'droː] n. 收回,撤退,退回
- 10. penalize ['pi:nəlaɪz] v. 处罚
- 11. overdraft ['əʊvədra:ft] n. 透支, 透支的款项
- 12. savings account 储蓄账户



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. faith in 对……的信心
 - e.g. I've got a lot of faith in the team; I'm sure they won't fail us.

我对这个队很有信心,我相信他们不会令我们失望的。

Thanks for having faith in me, I won't let you down!

感谢您对我的信任,我不会让您失望的!

- 2. offer sth. to sb. 为某人提供某物
 - e.g. She offers a special recipe to each of her patients.

她给她的每个病人都提供一份特殊的食谱。

The school offers lunch to children.

学校为孩子们提供午餐。



Exercise 牛刀小试

- I. Write the correct letter in the blank.
- 1. Banks provide people ____ a safe place to store their money.
 - A. for B. with

C. to

2. In the 1600s, Englis	h goldsmiths acted	l bankers.
A. as	B. like	C. with
3. Many of the banks	printed too much	paper money, which led several financial panics
and distrust in the ba	nking system.	
A. to	B. into	C. as
4. Many can be deposi	ted, or stored, at b	anks in a variety accounts.
A. to	B. for	C. of
5. This stopped people	from trying to con	nvert their bank deposits gold or currency.
A. with	B. to	C. into
6. Banks that were fina	ncially sound wer	e allowed reopen.
A. for	B. to	C. with
7. Later, the idea of b	oanks spread	_ Italy, where banking was conducted on city street
benches, to other Eur	ropean countries.	
A. to	B. from	C. into
8. If not, the depositor	is penalized	an overdraft fee, or charge.
A. with	B. to	C. as
II. Write true (T)	or false (F).	
1 In 1913, C	Congress establish	ned the Federal Reserve note as the only legal U.S.
currency.		
2 In March o	of 1933, Presiden	t Franklin D. Roosevelt ordered a nation-wide bank
holiday, the closing of	of all banks.	
3 In 1782, the	e United States Co	ngress established the First Bank of the United States.
4 Checking a	ccounts allow dep	positors to withdraw their money through ATMs, debit
cards, automatic pay	ment withdrawals,	and/or writing checks.
5 The Federa	l Deposit Insuranc	ee Corporation (FDIC) was created by the United States
Congress to help rest	tore faith in the ba	nking industry by protecting a depositor's money.
III. Complete the	se sentences.	
1. In the 1600s, Englis	h acted as	bankers.
2 return, the	bank will pay the	depositor interest, or a fee, for the use of their money.
3. Savings accounts all	low depositors to s	store their money the bank.

- 4. The bank uses the deposited money to make loans _____ customers.
- 5. The customers will pay the bank interest _____ the loan.

参考译文

早期银行业

银行为人们提供一个安全的地方存放他们的资金。早期,人们将他们的硬币交给那些将硬币储存在保险箱的货币兑换商和放债的人。随后,银行的概念从在街边长凳上进行银行业务的意大利传播到其他欧洲国家。在17世纪,英国的金匠扮演着银行家的角色。他们将人们的硬币储存在银行金库中。这些金匠为存款的人发放收据。而收据或纸币比硬币方便携带得多,因此人们开始拿它们当货币使用。

美国银行系统

1791年,美国国会建立了美国第一银行。许多州和个人也拥有并运营着银行。在这个"自由银行时代",每个银行都发行了它们自己的纸币。许多银行因印制过多的纸币导致了数起财政恐慌事件和人们对银行系统的不信任。1913年,国会将联邦储备银行发行的钞票定为美国唯一合法的流通货币。在20世纪30年代的大萧条时期,许

多银行倒闭。1933 年 3 月,罗斯福总统命令全国的银行歇业。这一举措阻止了人们的挤兑现象。罗斯福相信"这将为我们的金融机构提供一个复原的时间"。财政上可靠的银行允许重新开放。美国国会建立了联邦保险存款公司,通过保护存款者的钱以重建人们对银行业的信心。

当今的银行

如今,银行为顾客提供多种多样的服务。顾客可以在银行的多个账户内进行存取款。活期存款账户允许存款者通过银行自动取款机、提款卡、自动付款撤销和开支票进行取款。取款者的账户内必须有足够的钱以支付取款数额。如果没有,他们会因透支而被处以罚款。储蓄账户(定期账户)允许存款者将钱存放在银行。银行会给存款者一些利息作为使用他们的钱的回报。银行用这些存款给客户发放贷款。客户支付给银行贷款利息。银行也会通过收取活期账户、自动取款机取款的费用和透支罚款来赚钱。

"美"事一桩



ATM自动取款机

【概述】

ATM 是 Automatic Teller Machine 的缩写,意为自动柜员机。它是一种高度精密的机电一体化设备,是利用磁卡或智能 IC 卡储存用户信息并通过加密键盘(EPP)输入密码,然后通过银行内部网络验证并进行各种交易的金融自助设备。ATM 的出现减轻了银行柜台人员的工作压力,更为人类提供了安全方便的金融服务。

【ATM的发明】

1967 年 6 月 27 日,英国人约翰·谢泼德 – 巴伦 (John Shepherd-Barron) 发明的第一部电脑自动提款机,安装于英国伦敦北部的巴克莱银行 Enfield 分行。

1995年,上海金卡工程 ATM 在中国开通。

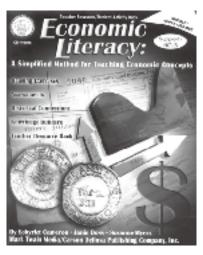
Answer

 $I. \quad 1. \; B \;\; 2. \; A \;\; 3. \; A \;\; 4. \; C \;\; 5. \; C \;\; 6. \; B \;\; 7. \; B \;\; 8. \; A$

II. 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T

III. 1. goldsmiths 2. In 3. at 4. to 5. on





15 Credit Cards

信用卡

赊购对于顾客来说是一种便捷的购物方式。不幸的是,信用卡不是免费的金钱,它们是高利率的 贷款。

Buying on Credit

Consumers can purchases goods and services without using currency. This is called buying on credit. Buying on credit is not a new idea. It dates back to ancient civilizations¹. Merchants, using a variety of methods, kept records of debts, or money owed to them, by customers. One method of early record keeping was tallying² using wooden sticks. Tallymen would notch³ one side of a stick to record the debt and the other side to record payment.

Installment4 Buying

Credit and debt played a major role in the development of the United States. The invention of the automobile transformed American buying habits. In the early 1900s, Henry Ford produced a method of buying on credit with payments, which over an extended period of time, became a way of life for many people. Later, individual businesses, such as oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards to encourage consumers to shop at their business.

Credit Cards

The credit card does not function as money because it cannot serve as a unit of account and it does not have a store of value. The use of a credit card is a loan from the issuer temporarily pays for the customer's purchases. The issuer then sends the customer a statement for all of the charges placed on credit that month. The customer can either pay back the card issuer in full or pay only a portion back and be charged interest on the remaining balance. Businesses like to issue credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in full every month and end up paying high amounts of interest. The interest rate can vary based on the customer's credit and payment history. Businesses reserve⁶ the right to deny credit to any customer that they feel is a bad risk or might not be able to repay the debt.



Problems with Buying on Credit

Buying on credit can be a convenient way to shop for customers. Unfortunately, credit cards are not free money. They are high-interest loans. The availability⁷ of easy credit encourages people to spend more money than they can afford. High interest rates on credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate⁸ rapidly. Later or missed payments on a credit card are reported to credit bureaus. This will lower an individual's credit rating, which is used to determine whether or not a person is a good credit risk.

【 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. civilization [,sɪvɪlaɪˈzeɪʃən] n. 文明, 文化, 文明社会
- **2. tally** ['tælɪ] *vt.* 点数, 计算, 记录, 加标签于
- **3. notch** [not∫] *vt*. 刻凹痕,用刻痕计算
- 4. installment [ɪnˈstɔːlmənt] n. 分期付款
- **5. temporary** ['tempərərɪ] *adj*. 暂时的,临时的,临时性的
- 6. reserve [rɪˈzəːv] vt. 储备,保存,保留,预定
- 7. availability [əˌveɪləˈbɪlɪtɪ] n. 可用性,有效性,实用性
- 8. accumulate [əˈkjʊːmjʊleɪt] v. 积聚,堆积



Expression 词句荟萃

1.date back to 追溯到

e.g. The Chinese civilization can date back to 5000 years ago.

中国文明可以追溯到五千年前。

My family has a vase, which is said to date back to Ming Dynasty.

我家有个花瓶,据说是从明代传下来的。

2. encourage sb. to do sth. 鼓励某人做某事

e.g. Teachers encourage students to read books as many as possible.

老师们鼓励学生尽量多读书。

My mother encourages us to help each other.

妈妈鼓励我们要互相帮助。

3. end up doing 结束做某事, 最终

e.g. We ended up sleeping around the floor after drinking too much last night.

我们昨晚喝了太多酒,最后都在地板上东倒西歪地睡了。

Beginning with injuring others and ending up ruining oneself.

损人不利己。



Exercise 牛刀小试

1		N	/r	ite	ا د	he	CO	rrec	f l	letter	in t	he	hl	anl	Ζ.
- 4	Le	V 1		LU		ш	- U		u.		1111 L		w		

1		1	1 1	•		
	Consumers ca	n niirchacec	and and	CETVICES	Without	currency
1.	Consumers ca	n burchases	goods and	SCI VICCS	williout	currency

- A. to use
- B. use
- C. using
- 2. Purchasing goods and services without using currency is called buying credit.
 - A. by
- B. in
- C. on
- 3. It dates back ancient civilizations.
 - A. to
- B. on
- C. for

4. Merchants, using a variety	methods, kept records of debts, or money owed to them, by
customers.	
A. of B. for	C. /
5. One method of early record ke	eping was tallying wooden sticks.
A. to use B. use	C. using
6. Credit and debt played a major	role in the development the United States.
A. / B. of	C. on
7. Later, individual businesses, su	uch as oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit cards
to encourage consumers	_ at their business.
A. shop B. shopp	ing C. to shop
8. An interest rate can vary based	a customer's credit and payment history.
A. at B. in	C. on
payments. 2 High interest rates on rapidly. 3 One method of early red Businesses like to issufull every month and end up pay	Henry Smith produced a method of buying on credit with a credit card balances can cause people's debts to accumulate ecord keeping was tallying using wooden sticks. The credit cards since many consumers do not pay their bills in ying high amounts of interest. The not function as money because it cannot serve as a unit of
III. Complete these senten1. Later, individual businesses, scards to encourage consumers t	such oil companies and hotel chains, would issue credit
_	ack the card issuer in full pay only a portion back and be
charged interest on the remaini	
_	role in the development of the United States.

跟美国学生一起学英语: 高级版

- 4. Credit cards are not free money, but high-interest .
- 5. Businesses reserve the right to deny credit to any customer that they feel is a bad risk or might not be able to _____ the debt.

参考译文

赊购

消费者可以不用现金购买商品和服务,这叫作赊购。赊购并不是一个新想法,它可追溯到古代文明时期。商人通过多种方式记录顾客的欠款。一种早期记录的方式是通过竹签计数。商人在竹签的一端刻痕记录欠款,另一端记录已支付的款项。

分期付款

借贷在美国的发展中扮演了很重要的角色。 汽车的发明改变了美国人的购买习惯。20世纪初, 亨利·福特开创的通过赊账购买的方式在长期的 一段时期内变成了很多人的一种生活方式。随后, 私企,如石油公司和连锁饭店发放信用卡以鼓励 消费者在他们的企业内消费。

信用卡

信用卡并不能起到像钱一样的作用,因为它 既不是一种计算单位也不能作为价值的储藏。信 用卡的作用是从发放者那里临时贷款以支付顾客的购买行为。它随后寄给顾客一张当月的所有使用信用卡的费用明细。顾客可以全额偿还信用卡发放者欠款或只偿还一部分并被收取剩余差额的利息。企业很喜欢发放信用卡,因为很多顾客不会每月全额偿还欠款,因而最后只得支付高额的利息。利率会根据一个顾客的信誉度和还款史而变化。企业有权拒绝任何存在还款风险或无力还款的顾客。

赊购带来的问题

赊购对于顾客来说是一种便捷的购物方式。 不幸的是,信用卡不是免费的金钱。它们是高利 率的贷款。这种简单的、触手可及的赊购方式使 得人们的花费高出他们可承受的额度。信用卡差 额的高利率可能会造成人们的负债急速增加。过 时偿还或尚未偿还的信用卡债务会被报告给信用 资料社。这会降低个人的信用指数,信用指数被 用来决定一个人是否是一个好的借款人。

"美"事一桩



美国次贷危机

美国次贷危机(Subprime Crisis)又称次级房贷危机,也译为次债危机。它是指一场发生在美国,由次级抵押贷款机构破产、投资基金被迫冻结、股市剧烈震荡引起的金融风暴。它致使全球主要金融市场出现流动性不足危机。美国次贷危机从2006年春季开始逐步显现。2007年8月开始席卷美国、欧盟和日本等世界主要金融市场。次贷危机目前已经成为国际上的一个热点问题。

在美国,贷款是非常普遍的。当地人很少全款买房,通常都是长期贷款。可是在那里失业和再就业是很常见的现象。这些收入并不稳定甚至根本没有收入的人,在买房时因为信用等级达不到标准,就被定义为次级信用贷款者,简称次级贷款者。

由于之前的房价很高,银行认为尽管贷款给了次级信用借款人,即使借款人无法偿还贷款,也可以通过拍卖或出售抵押的房屋收回银行贷款。但由于房价突然走低,银行在出售房屋时,却发现得到的资金不能弥补当时的贷款加利息,甚至都无法弥补贷款额本身,这样银行就会在这些贷款上出现亏损。

一两个借款人出现这样的问题还好,但由于分期付款的利息上升,加上这些借款人本身就是次级信用贷款者,这样就导致了大量无法还贷的借款人的出现。正如上面所说,银行收回房屋,却卖不到 高价,大面积亏损,引发了次贷危机。

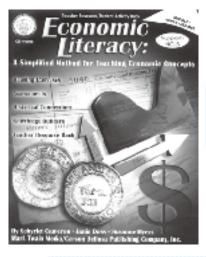




II. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. T

III. 1. as 2. or 3. played 4. loans 5. repay





16 Stock Market

股市

股市是可以购买、出售、交易股票或公司股份所有权的场所。公司通过销售股份筹集资金,以进行产品 推广和研发。股票购买者是在对公司进行投资。他们成为股东,即以追求利益为目的的公司所有者之一。

Stock Market Terminology¹

The stock market is a place where people can buy, sell, or trade stocks, or shares of ownership in companies. A company sells shares to raise money for expansion or research for product development. People who buy stocks are investing² in the company. They become stockholders³, or part owners in the company with the hope of making money. If the company grows and makes a profit, the investor can make money. The company may share the profits with the stockholder by



paying a dividend⁴. The stockholder can also make money or a capital gain by selling the stock when the price per share increases. Stockholders often pay stockbrokers⁵ to manage their stock portfolio⁶, which are all the stocks an investor owns. Investing in the stock market is risky, and profits are not guaranteed⁷.

History of the U.S. Stock Market

The United States emerged from the American Revolution as a nation heavily in debt. The founding fathers wanted to pay off war debt while becoming an economic world power. Alexander Hamilton, the first U.S. Secretary of the Treasury, came up with the idea of starting a stock exchange modeled⁸ after the one in Great Britain. In New York, selling stocks become so successful that the stock market trading moved from a street corner into a building on Wall Street.

The stock market prospered in the U.S. until the early 1900s. Individuals hoping to become millionaires were borrowing large sums from banks to buy stocks. By the fall of 1929, heavy speculation, which is buying, selling, and trading of stocks on credit, had driven stock prices to record highs. When stock prices started to fall, it caused a nationwide panic. Investors rushing to sell found no one wanting to buy. In late October, the stock market crashed. The crash was a major cause of the Great Depression. The Securities Act of 1933 established the Securities and Exchange Commission¹⁰ to protect investors and the nation against another stock market crash. Today, the stock market is monitored and regulated at both the state and federal levels.

Tracking Stocks

Stocks are traded on a variety of stock exchanges throughout the world. One of the largest and most familiar exchanges is the New York Stock Exchange (NYSE). One of the most popular ways to keep track of the up and down movement of the entire stock market is to check the Dow Jones Industrial Average (DOW11). Two animals are used to describe the ups and downs of the stock market. A bull



market is when stock market prices continue to rise over an extended time period. The bear market is the opposite¹² of a bull market.



🥰 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. terminology [ˌtəːmɪˈnɒlədʒɪ] n. 术语学
- 2. invest [ɪn'vest] v. 投(资),购买(有用之物),授予,投资
- 3. stockholder ['stokhəuldə(r)] n. 股东
- **4. dividend** ['dɪvɪdend] n. 被除数,股息,红利,额外津贴,奖金,年息
- **5. stockbroker** ['stokbrəʊkə(r)] *n*. 股票经纪人
- **6. portfolio** [pɔːtˈfəʊlɪəʊ] n. 股份单,证券投资组合
- 7. guarantee [.gærənˈtiː] vt. 保证,担保
- **8. model** ['mɒdl] vt. 模仿,模拟

- 9. security [sɪˈkjʊərɪtɪ] n. 安全
- **10. commission** [kəˈmɪ∫ən] *n*. 委任,委托,代办(权),代理(权)
- 11. Dow Jones Industrial Average (DOW) 道琼斯工业平均指数
- 12. opposite ['ppəzɪt] n. 相反的事物



Expression 词句荟萃

1. pay off 还清(债务等)付清,报复,赢利

e.g. It took them three years to pay off the debt.

他们三年才还清欠债。

Most of the profits are swallowed up by the mortgage. Once we've got that paid off I'll feel we've turned the corner.

房产抵押耗尽了大部分利润,一旦抵押款偿清,我们就渡过了难关。

- **2. come up with (**针对问题、挑战等)提出,想出;提供
 - e.g. No one has come up with a convincing explanation of why dinosaurs die out.

尚未有人能对恐龙的灭绝做出一个令人信服的解释。

The scientists are beating their brains trying to come up with a solution to the problem.

科学家正绞尽脑汁, 力求找到解决这个问题的办法。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I.	Writ	te tl	he cor	rect I	etter	in t	he	blanl	K.
----	------	-------	--------	--------	-------	------	----	-------	----

1. A company sells shares to raise money for expansion or research product development.)

C. for

A.at B.to

2. People who buy stocks are investing _____ the company.

A. for B. in C. to

3. They become stockholders, or part owners in the company the hope of making money.				
A. of		B. with	C. for	
4. The con	mpany may s	share the profits _	the stockholder by paying a dividend.	
A. with	1	B. in	C. at	
5. Investi	ng in the stoo	ck market is	, and profits are not guaranteed.	
A. risk	ed	B. risking	C. risky	
6. The for	ınding father	rs wanted to pay _	war debt while becoming an economic world power.	
A. in		B. off	C. of	
7. Alexan	der Hamilto	on, the first U.S.	Secretary of the Treasury, came up the idea or	
starting	a stock exch	ange modeled aft	ter the one in Great Britain.	
A. with	1	B. to	C. at	
8. Individ	uals hoping	to become million	onaires were borrowing large sums banks to buy	
stocks.				
A. at		B. to	C. from	
9. The Se	curities Act	of 1933 establish	hed the Securities and Exchange Commission to protec	
investor	s and the nat	tion anoth	her stock market crash.	
A. aga	nst	B. to	C. for	
II. Writ	II. Write true (T) or false (F).			
1 Stocks are traded on a variety of stock exchanges throughout the world. One of the				
largest and most familiar exchanges is the New York Stock Exchange (NYSE).				
2 The stock market is a place where people can buy, sell, or trade stocks, or shares of				
ownership in companies.				
3	A bull mar	ket is when stoc	k market prices continue to rise over an extended time	
period.				
4	A bear man	rket is when stoc	k market prices continue to rise over an extended time	
period.				
5	The Securit	ties Act of 1923	established the Securities and Exchange Commission to	
protect investors and the nation against another stock market crash.				
		∼ ∼		

III. Complete these sentences.

- One of the most popular ways to keep track of the up and down movement of the entire stock market is to check the Dow Jones Industrial ______ (DOW).
 If the company grows and makes a ______, the investor can make money.
 Two animals are used to describe the ups and ______ of the stock market.
 By the fall of 1929, heavy speculation, which is buying, selling, and trading of stocks on _____, had driven stock prices to record highs.
- 5. Investors _____ (rush) to sell found no one wanting to buy.

参考译文

股市术语

股市是可以购买、出售、交易股票或公司股份所有权的场所。公司通过销售股份筹集资金,以进行产品推广和研发。股票购买者是在对公司进行投资。他们成为股东,即以追求利益为目的的公司所有者之一。如果公司成长并获利,投资者也能得到利益。公司支付股息之后可与股东共同分享利润。股价上涨时,股东也可以通过出售股票获得收入,即资本收益。股东往往聘请股票经纪人对持有的所有股票进行投资组合管理。股市投资存在风险,并不保证赢利。

美国股市发展史

独立战争之后的美国呈现出一副负债累累的 面貌。建国者们希望国家在支付战争债务的同时 成为世界经济强国。美国第一任财政部长亚历山 大:汉密尔顿提出效仿英国成立证券交易所的想 法。在纽约,股票买卖非常成功,股市交易从街 角走入华尔街大厦。

股市在美国的繁荣持续到 20 世纪初。梦想成为百万富翁的人们从银行借贷大量资金购买股票。到了 1929 年秋天,大规模投机,即通过借贷的股票买卖交易,推动股票价格再创新高。之后股票价格的下降引起了全国性的恐慌。投资者急于出售股票但发觉没有买家。在 10 月后期,股市崩盘。这是诱发大萧条的主要原因。1933 年出台的《证券法》规定成立证券交易委员会,以保护投资者和国家免于另一轮股市灾难。如今,州和联邦同时对股市进行监测和管理。

追踪股票

世界各地的许多证券交易所都进行股票交易。纽约证券交易所(NYSE)是规模最大、名声最盛的交易所之一。跟踪整个股市涨跌走势最普遍的方法之一是使用道琼斯工业平均指数

(DOW)。有两种动物被用来描述股票市场的起 伏波动。牛市是指股票价格在很长的一段时间内 持续上涨。而熊市则相反。

Answer

I. 1. C 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. A

II. 1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F

III. 1. Average 2. profit 3. downs 4. credit 5. rushing



"美"事一桩

股票市场的起源

股票至今已有将近 400 年的历史。股票是社会化大生产的产物。随着人类社会进入了社会化大生产时期,企业经营规模扩大与资本需求不足的矛盾日益突出,于是产生了以股份公司形态出现的、股东共同出资经营的企业组织;股份公司的变化和发展产生了股票形态的融资活动;股票融资的发展产生了股票交易的需求;股票的交易需求促成了股票市场的形成和发展;而股票市场的发展最终又促进了股票融资活动和股份公司的完善和发展。所以,股份公司、股票融资和股票市场的相互联系和相互作用,推动着股份公司、股票融资和股票市场的共同发展。

股票最早出现于资本主义国家。在 17 世纪初,随着资本主义大工业的发展,企业生产经营规模不断扩大,由此而产生的资本短缺、资本不足便成为制约资本主义企业经营和发展的重要因素之一。为了筹集更多的资本,出现了股份公司形态的由股东共同出资经营的企业组织,这些企业进而又将筹集资本的范围扩展至社会,产生了以股票这种表示投资者投资入股,并按出资额的大小享受一定的权益和承担一定的责任的有价凭证,股票向社会公开发行,以吸收和集中分散在社会上的资金。

股票交易市场远溯到 1602 年,荷兰人开始在阿姆斯特河桥上买卖荷属东印度公司股票,这是全世界第一支公开交易的股票,而阿姆斯特河大桥则是世界最早的股票交易所。在那里挤满了等着与股票经纪人交易的投资人,这种交易甚至惊动警察进场维持秩序。荷兰的投资人在第一个股票交易所投资了上百万荷币,只为了求得拥有这家公司的股票,以彰显身份的尊贵。

现在大部分国家都有一个或多个股票交易所。纽约证券交易所是美国最大、最老、最有人气的股票市场。纽约证交所有 200 多年的历史,大部分历史悠久的财富 500 强都会在纽约证券交易所挂牌。在纽约证交所,经纪人依客户所开的条件在场内公开寻找买卖主,本身不左右价格。

Part 3 American History 美国历史

第一批到达北美洲的欧洲人是冰岛海盗,大约在公元 1000 年,其首领名叫雷夫·埃里克逊。 他们的足迹曾在加拿大纽芬兰省被发现,但这些人没能建立起永久居住地,很快就与新大陆脱 离了联系。

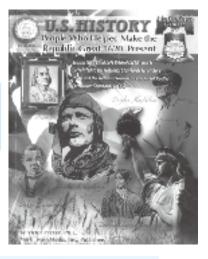
500 年后,对亚洲香料、纺织品和染料的需求促使欧洲的航海家们梦想找到一条缩短东西方距离的航线。1492 年,意大利航海家克里斯托弗·哥伦布代表西班牙王室,从欧洲向西航行,在加勒比海巴哈马群岛中的一座岛屿靠了岸。西班牙探险家们用了 40 年的时间在中部和南部美洲建立起一个庞大的帝国。到 16、17 世纪,北欧人开始在现在的美国东北部海岸定居,这里很快成为英国的地盘,在 18 世纪发生革命战争前一直是英国的殖民地。

18世纪中叶,英国在美洲的殖民地与英国之间已有了裂痕。殖民地的扩张使他们产生某种自觉,他们发觉了英国对他们的迫害,萌生了独立的念头。1781年,美军赢得了独立战争决定性的胜利,进而成立了全国性政府。

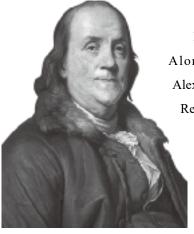
Benjamin Franklin

17

本杰明·富兰克林



本杰明·富兰克林(1706—1790)是他所在年代的风云人物之一。他与同期的乔治·华盛顿、托马斯·杰弗逊和亚历山大·汉密尔顿一起,成为美国革命与后革命时期的领军人物。



Benjamin Franklin was one of the great men of his age.

Along with George Washington, Thomas Jefferson, and

Alexander Hamilton, he was among the leading Americans of the

Revolutionary and post-Revolutionary period.

Franklin was born in Boston, the 15th child in a brood¹ of 17. His father was a chandler²; his mother was a strict and authoritarian³ woman. Although Franklin attended school for a time—long enough to prove himself an undistinguished scholar—he withdrew and went to work for

his father.

Continuing to be an omnivorous⁴ reader, he consumed books on algebra⁵, geometry, navigation, grammar, logic, science, French, German, Italian, Spanish, and Latin.

At 12 years of age, he was apprenticed⁶ to his brother James, a printer. Aspiring⁷ to write, he produced a series of articles under the pen name of "Mrs. Silence Dogood". James, not knowing that Benjamin had written them, printed the articles in his paper. Eventually, after his identity was discovered, Franklin fled to Philadelphia. At the age of 17, he worked as a printer and managed to buy a press in 1730. His newspaper, the *Pennsylvania Gazette*⁸, quickly became a success due to its style and wit⁹.

His eventual marriage to Deborah Reed proved to be a happy one only to a degree. Deborah

was inclined to nag10, simply because she did not understand the extent of Franklin's ambition.

In 1733, he began the publication of *Poor Richard's Almanack*¹¹, an annual accomplishment that kept him busy for years. Meanwhile, his fertile¹² mind and unending energy led him into other projects. He was Philadelphia's postmaster for a time and improved on the mail service. He established special messenger services between certain cities. He started the world's first subscription¹³ library. He organized a fire department. He reformed the city police and commenced a program to pave and light the streets of the town. He led the fight to establish a hospital in Philadelphia, and he helped to found the American Philosophical Society.

Later, he studied the relationship between electricity and lightning and conducted his famous kite experiments to prove his point. In between times, he studied the flow of ocean currents¹⁴, invented a new kind of stove, and brought bifocal¹⁵ glasses to the Colonies.

The list of accomplishments in Franklin's life had only begun. He persuaded the British government to drop *the Stamp Act*. When the Colonies chose the path of independence, he helped write the *Declaration of Independence*. When the Colonies needed military help, he went to France and persuaded that government to send troops and supplies.

In the Constitutional Convention of 1787, he was the sobering¹⁶ voice of compromise. His last public act was to sign an appeal to Congress calling for the abolition¹⁷ of slavery in America.

He died in April 1790. Approximately 20,000 people attended ceremonies in Philadelphia in his honor. He was buried in Christ Church Cemetery. In anticipation of this event, Franklin had even written his own headstone¹⁸ inscription.

Benjamin Franklin TIME LINE FRANKLIN'S SCIENTIFIC RESEARCH **DECLARATION FRANKLIN OF ESTABLISHED** PENNSYLVANIA GAZETTE *INDEPENDENCE* 1787 1790 1706 CONSTITUTIONAL 1730 1776 1740 CONVENTION FRANKLIN **STOVE**



🧲 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1. brood** [bru:d] *n*. (动物中鸟或家禽的)一窝, (同种或同类的)一伙
- 2. chandler ['t[a:ndlə] n. 杂货零售商, 蜡烛制造者
- **3. authoritarian** [ɔːˌθɒrɪˈteərɪən] *adj*. 独裁的, 独裁主义的
- 4. omnivorous [pm'nɪvərəs] adj. 杂食的,什么都吃的,什么都读的,随手乱拿的
- 5. algebra [ˈældʒɪbrə] n. 代数学
- 6. apprentice [ə'prentɪs] v. 当学徒
- 7. aspire [əsˈpaɪə] vi. 热望,立志
- 8. gazette [gə'zet] n. 报纸,政府的公报,(大学的)学报 v. 在公报上刊登,在公报上刊载
- 9. wit [wɪt] n. 智力, 才智, 智慧
- **10.** nag[næg]n. 老马,驽马,劣等竞赛马,(作为坐骑的)矮小马,唠叨v. 不断地唠叨,恼人
- 11. almanack ['ɔ:lmənæk; 'ɔlməˌnæk; 'ɔmənɪk] n. <古>=almanac历书, 年鉴
- 12. fertile ['fa:taɪl; 'fa:tɪl] adj. 肥沃的, 富饶的, 能繁殖的
- **13. subscription** [sʌbˈskrɪp[ən] *n*. 捐献,订金,订阅,签署,同意,[医]下标处方
- **14. current** [ˈkʌrənt] *n*. 涌流, 趋势, 电流, 水流, 气流
- 15. bifocal [baɪˈfəʊkəl] adj. 双焦点的
- **16. sobering** ['səυbərɪη] *adj*. 使清醒的, 使冷静的
- 17. abolition [æbəˈlɪ[ən] n. 废除, 废除奴隶制度
- 18. headstone ['hedstəun] n. 墓石, 基石



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. due to 由于, 因为
 - e.g. Most of the problems were due to human error.

多数问题都是人为错误造成的。

The project had to be abandoned due to a lack of government funding.

这项工程由于缺乏政府的资助而不得不放弃。



2. incline to 倾向于,有……的趋势

e.g. His obvious sincerity inclined me to trust him.

他满脸的真诚, 让我愿意相信他。

I incline to view that we should take no action at this stage.

我倾向于认为我们在这个阶段不应采取行动。

They will be more inclined to listen if you don't shout.

你要是不大声嚷叫,他们会更愿意倾听。

- 3. lead to/into 导致,造成(后果);使得出(观点)
 - e.g. Eating too much sugar can lead to health problems.

食用过多的糖会引起健康问题。

This has led scientists to speculate on the existence of other galaxies.

这就使得科学家推测还有其他星系存在。

- **4.** call for (去)接;需要;(公开)要求
 - e.g. I'll call for you at 7 o'clock.

我7点钟去接你。

The situation calls for prompt action.

目前的形势需要立即采取行动。

They called for the immediate release of the hostages.

他们要求立即释放人质。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.

1. Franklin's mother was a strict and woman.

A. auditoria B. authorized C. authoritarian

2. Franklin prove himself a(n) scholar at school.

A. distinguished B. undistinguished C. distinct

		\sim	
3 to write, he produced a series of articles.			
A. Aspiring	B. Inspiring	C. respiring	
4. Poor Richard's Alr.	nanack was an annual		that kept Franklin busy for
years.			
A. accomplishmen	B. amusement	C. achievement	
5. Franklin started the	world's first	library.	
A. prescription	B. subscription	C. inscription	
6. Franklin helped to	found the American	So	ociety.
A. Psychological	B. Physical	C. Philosophica	1
II. Write true (T)	or false (F).		
1 Franklin pro	duced a series of articles u	inder the pen name	of "Mrs. Silence Dogood."
2 James, know	ring that Benjamin had wr	itten them, printed	the articles in his paper.
3 The <i>Pennsyl</i>	vania Gazette, quickly bed	came a success due	to its style and wit.
4 In 1733, he l	pegan the publication of Po	oor Richard's Alma	nack.
5. Franklin was Philadelphia's postmaster for a time and improved on the mail service.			
6 Approximately 2,000 people attended funeral ceremonies in Philadelphia in the honor			
of Franklin.			
III. Complete the sentences with the words given.			
compromise commence apprentice extent appeal withdraw			
	from school and		
2. At 12 years of age, he was to his brother James.			
3. Deborah did not understand the of Franklin's ambition.			
4. He reformed the city police and a program to pave and light the			
streets of the town.			
5. Franklin last public act was to sign an to Congress calling for the abolition of			
slavery in America.			
6. In the Constitutional Convention of 1787, Franklin was the sobering voice of			
·			
	\sim		

参考译文

本杰明·富兰克林是他所在年代的风云人物之一。他与同期的乔治·华盛顿、托马斯·杰弗逊和亚历山大·汉密尔顿一起,成为美国革命与后革命时期的领军人物。

富兰克林出生在波士顿,他是家里十七个孩子中的第十五个。他的父亲是一个杂货店老板,母亲则是一位严厉而又独裁的女性。尽管富兰克林接受过一段时期的学校教育——时间之长足以证明他是一个表现平平的学者——他放弃了学业去为父亲帮忙。但他仍然继续着自己读书的习惯,博览群书,代数、几何、航海、语法、逻辑、自然科学、法文、德文、意大利文、西班牙文、拉丁文都是他涉猎的范围。

12岁时,他给他的哥哥詹姆斯——一个印刷商——当学徒。出于对写作的渴望,他以"Silence Dogood 夫人"的笔名创作了一系列作品。詹姆斯并不知道那些作品是他的弟弟本杰明创作的,将它们印刷在了自己的报纸上。最后,富兰克林的身份被发现,逃往费城。1730年,当时17岁的富兰克林成为一个印刷商并设法买下了一家出版社。他的报纸《宾夕法尼亚报》由于独特的风格和敏锐的视角很快便大获成功。

他最终与德博拉·里德结婚,而实践证明这段婚姻并不十分美满。德博拉并不知道富兰克林的鸿鹄之志,她总是喜欢唠叨个不停。

1733 年,他开始出版《可怜的理查德历书》, 这项每年都有的工作使他很多年都处在一种忙碌

状态。同时,他富有创造力的大脑和永不枯竭的精力促使他涉足了一些其他的领域。他曾担任过宾夕法尼亚州的邮政局长,积极改善信件邮递服务;在一些城市之间建立起特殊邮递服务机制;创建了世界上第一所订阅图书馆;组织消防队;改革城市的警察制度;实施城镇铺路的工程并修筑路灯;在费城领导了开设医院的斗争;并帮助成立了"美国哲学协会"。

之后,他研究了电与闪电的关系并通过著名的风筝试验证明了自己的观点。其间,他还研究了洋流的湾流图,发明了一种新式烤炉,并将双光眼镜引入到了北美殖民地。

这一系列的成功只是富兰克林一生成就的 开始。他成功游说英国政府停止了《印花税法》。 当北美殖民地选择走上独立的道路时,他帮助撰 写了《独立宣言》。当北美殖民地需要武装力量 支持时,他出使法国,成功劝说法国政府派出军 队并提供补给。

在 1787 年美国宪法法案的制定工作中,他 使争论激烈的双方达成了协议。他最后一个公开 举动是签署了向国会提出的废除美国奴隶制的请 愿书。

1790 年富兰克林溘然长逝。大约 20000 人参加了在费城为他举办的葬礼。他被葬于基督教堂公墓。他早已预料到这一天,去世前就已写好了自己的墓志铭。

Benjamin Franklin

时间表 富兰克林的科学研究



名人轶事

1732年,本杰明·富兰克林开始出版历书。 他佯称这些历书都是一位名叫理查德·桑德斯的 人撰写的。富兰克林称他为"可怜的理查德",

他的历书不久就闻名全殖民地。这些小册子被译 成了几乎所有已知的文字。

首先,富兰克林是个科学家,他所刊登的关于恒星和行星的每件事都是正确的。除可靠的信息外,还印有很多诗和简短的名言。可怜的理查德认为人们应当努力工作,节省金钱,生活简朴,真诚老实。他用各种方法使全殖民地的人民认识到:

《可怜的理查德历书》为什么如此受欢迎呢?

老头。他用各种方法便宝殖民地的人民认识到: 建设一个繁荣昌盛国家的方法就是他们无论做什 么工作总要诚诚恳恳、贯彻始终。

这里引用《可怜的理查德历书》里的几则劝告:

与智者交谈,一言已足。

用旧了的钥匙总是明亮的。

如果你热爱生命,就不要浪费时间,因为生命是由时间组成的。

一个"今天"等于两个"明天"。

保护你的店铺,你的店铺就会保护你。

如果你想有一个忠实的仆人并且是你喜欢的 人,那你就给自己当仆人吧。

小漏洞可以沉大船。

你要想知道金钱的价值,就去试试向别人借 点钱。

经验包含珍贵的学问,但蠢人却不能从中获 得教益。

早睡早起使人健康、富裕和聪明。

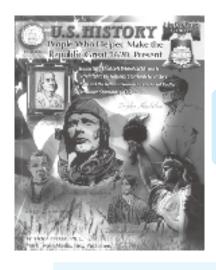
Answer

I. 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B 6. C

II. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T 6. F

III. 1. withdrew 2. apprenticed 3. extent 4. commenced 5. appeal 6. compromise





Charles 18 William Eliot

查尔斯·威廉·爱略特

查尔斯·威廉·爱略特(1834—1926)是美国历史上杰出的教育家之一。他的一生似乎都与哈佛大 学紧密相连。他在1849年,也就是当他只有15岁的时候被哈佛大学录取了。在那里他受到了本杰明·皮尔 斯、路易斯·阿格塞、阿萨·格雷和约西亚·帕森斯·库克等人的影响。

Charles William Eliot was one of the greatest educational leaders in the history of the United States. He was born to New England Yankee¹ stock² in 1834. His entire life seems to have been associated with Harvard College. Charles's father was the treasurer³ and historian of the college, and Charles himself was enrolled in the institution in 1849—at only fifteen years of age. There he came under the influence of such men as Benjamin Pierce, Louis Agassiz, Asa Gray, and Josiah Parsons Cooke.

Four years after his graduation, Charles became a professor at Harvard. As one of the youngest professors in the history of the institution, Eliot introduced laboratory exercise, elective instruction, and written examinations.



In 1865, and later in 1867, Eliot made first-hand observations of education in Europe. Shortly after his return, he wrote an interesting article on his experiences for Atlantic Monthly, and this, plus his growing reputation, caused his appointment to the presidency⁴ of Harvard.

The changes brought about by Eliot at Harvard were not only revolutionary at that college but also powerful in terms of having a national impact. During his lifetime, the school quadrupled⁵ in student size, and it added graduate schools in arts and sciences, applied science and business, and courses in such wide and diverse areas as architecture and forestry.

Eliot also brought women members into the faculty and recruited leading professors in

foreign countries for the Harvard staff. He developed "exchange professorships", introduced the notion⁶ of sabbatical⁷ leaves, and developed a liberal system of retirement allowances⁸. All three of these latter reforms were so far ahead of the situation in the rest of the nation that some colleges still did not have them as late as 1930.

Eliot also introduced the notion of allowing students to carry more courses during a term and pushed a plan to allow the medical college to grant the M.D. after three years of study.

Eliot's writings were so voluminous⁹ that one wonders how he did it all. He wrote enough to fill at least eight volumes, as well as the Report of the President of Harvard College. These last are still considered prime¹⁰ reading in the study of higher education.

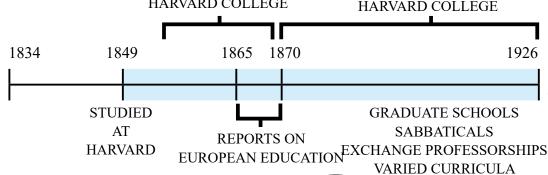
Besides all of this, Eliot edited the *Harvard Classics*. He had once made a remark that a man could obtain a liberal education by reading only fifteen minutes a day. Being challenged on that statement, he undertook to prepare a range of reading that could prove his point. So widely was Eliot respected in the United States that the *Harvard Classics* became best-selling publications, to be found in the homes of many American families.

It could be said that higher education in America from 1850 to 1930 was marked by the dominance¹¹ of imposing¹² and effective college presidents. Among these would be such men as Angell, McCosh, Hopkins, and Eliot himself. They were important, not only because of the changes they made in American colleges and universities, but for a number of other reasons as well. They created a distinctive¹³ system of higher education that was truly American. Most of all, however, by their imposing intellectuality14, they developed among their students a profound respect for the world of learning.

Charles William Eliot

TIME LINE

PROFESSOR AT PRESIDENCY OF HARVARD COLLEGE HARVARD COLLEGE





🥇 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1. Yankee** ['jæηkɪ] *n*. [美] 美国人, 美国佬
- 2. stock [stok] n. 树干, 库存, 股票, 股份, 托盘, 祖先, 血统, 原料
- **3.** treasurer ['treʒərə] n. 掌管钱款的人,司库,出纳员; 财务主任; [美]财政部出纳局长
- **4.** presidency ['prezidensi] *n.* 总统[主席、议长、校长]的职位[任期]
- **5. quadruple** ['kwɒdrupl] *adj*. 四倍的,四重的,[乐]每小节四拍的
- **6. notion** ['nəʊ[ən] *n*. 概念,观念,想法,意见,打算,主张
- **7. sabbatical** [səˈbætɪk(ə)l] *adj*. 安息日的,似安息日的,周期性休息的
- 8. allowance [əˈlaʊəns] n. 津贴,补助,宽容,允许
- 9. voluminous [vəˈliʊːmɪnəs, vəˈlʊː-] adi. 卷数多的,著书多的,容积大的,长篇的
- **10.** prime [praɪm] adj. 主要的,最初的,有青春活力的,最好的,第一流的
- 11. dominance ['domɪnəns] n. 优势, 统治
- 12. imposing [ɪmˈpəʊzɪŋ] adj. 使人难忘的, 壮丽的
- **13. distinctive** [dɪs'tɪηktɪv] adj. 与众不同的, 有特色的
- 14. intellectuality [.ɪntɪˈlektjʊˈælɪtɪ] n. 智力,知性



Expression 词句荟萃

1. associate with 联想;联系;交往; (尤指)混在一起;表明支持,表示同意 e.g. He is closely associated in the public mind with horror movies.

在公众的心目中, 他总是和恐怖电影紧密联系在一起。

I don't like you associating with those people.

我不喜欢你和那些人混在一起。

May I associate myself with the Prime Minister's remarks?

我可以公开表示赞成首相的话吗?



2. enroll (in/on) 加入, 注册, 登记

e.g. You need to enroll before the end of August.

你必须在8月底前注册。

The center will soon be ready to enroll candidates for the new programme.

中心将很快为新课程的招生做好准备。

to enroll on a course / to enroll in a course

注册学习一门课程

3. ahead of 在……前面; 早于; 领先

e.g. Ahead of us lay ten days of intensive training.

我们还要讲行10天的强化训练。

I finished several days ahead of the deadline.

我是在最后期限的前几天完成的。

His ideas were way ahead of his time.

他的思想远远超越了他那个时代。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write	the corre	ct letter in the blank.		
1. Charles' entire life seems to have been			with Harvard Col	lege.
A. asse	ssed	B. assassinated	C. associated	/
2. In 1865, and later in 1867, Eliot made first-hand of education in				
Europe				,
A. obs	ervations	B. conservations	C. preservations	
3. The cha	anges brough	t about by Eliot at Harvard	were powerful	having
a natio	nal impact.			
A. in to	ırn of	B. in terms of	C. in favor of	

	\sim	_	
4. Eliot introduced t	he notion of	leaves.	
A. substantial	B. statistical	C. sabbatical	
5. College presiden	ts created a	system of higher education that was truly	
American.			
A. distinctive	B. distractive	C. distinction	
II. Write true (7	Γ) or false (F).		
1 Charles hi	mself was enrolled in Har	rvard institution in 1849—at only sixteen years of age.	
2 Charles of	came under the influence	ce of such men as Benjamin Pierce, Louis Agassiz,	
Asa Gray, and Jos	iah Parsons Cooke at Ha	arvard.	
3 Eliot intro	oduced laboratory exerc	ise, elective instruction and written examinations.	
4 Eliot also	introduced the notion	of allowing students to carry more courses during a	
term.			
5 The <i>Repo</i>	ort of the President of I	Harvard College is still considered prime reading in	
the study of higher	r education.		
6 Hopkins'	s the Harvard Classics	became best-selling publications, to be found in the	
homes of many Ar	merican families.		
III. Complete th	ne sentences with th	ne right form of the words given.	
al	lowance quadruple vol	uminous dominance recruit stock	
	ew England Yankee		
2. During Eliot's life	etime, the school	in student size.	
3. Eliot also leading professors in foreign countries for the Harvard staff.			
		rement	
5. Eliot's writings were so that one wonders how he did it all.			
		n America from 1850 to 1930 was marked by the	
	of imposing and e	effective college presidents.	
	\sim		

参考译文

查尔斯·威廉·爱略特是美国历史上杰出的教育家之一。1834年他出生于美国东北部新英格兰地区的一个本土家庭。他的一生似乎都与哈佛大学紧密相连。查尔斯的父亲是哈佛大学的一名财务主任和历史学家,而查尔斯也在1849年也就是当他只有15岁的时候被哈佛大学录取了。在那里他受到了本杰明·皮尔斯、路易斯·阿格塞、阿萨·格雷和约西亚·帕森斯·库克等人的影响。

毕业四年后,查尔斯成为哈佛大学的一名教授。作为学院历史上最年轻的教授之一,他引进了实验室练习、选修课指导和笔试考试。

在 1865 年和之后的 1867 年,爱略特亲自对欧洲的教育进行了研究。回国之后他很快依据亲身经历在《大西洋月刊》上发表了一篇颇有趣味的文章。正是这篇文章,再加上他渐渐显赫的名望,促使他升任了哈佛大学的校长。

爱略特给哈佛带来的变化不仅对学院来说是 革命性的,在全国范围内更是产生了深远影响。在 他的有生之年,学校的生源扩大了四倍,在人文学 科、自然科学学科、应用科学学科和商学学科增设 了研究生学院,同时还在建筑学和林业学这样广泛 且多样化的学科增设了相关的课程。

爱略特同时还招收女教师,并从国外聘请一 : 创建了真正有美国特色的高等教育的流教授加入到哈佛的教师队伍。他开创了"教授 重要的是,他们凭借着自己超凡的知 交流"项目,引进了公休假概念,创建了新式退 : 生们发自内心地对学术界充满崇敬。

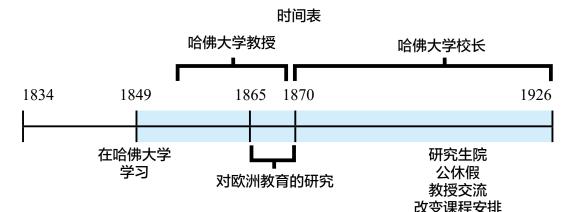
爱略特也引进了允许学生在一学期中可以选修更多课程的概念,并推行了允许医学学院学生在三年学习后即可被授予医学博士的计划。

爱略特的写作量之多使人不禁要想知道他是 怎样做到这一切的。他的著作量多达八卷,包括 《哈佛大学校长报告》。这些著作在后来仍被认为 是高等教育里的主要阅读书籍。

除此之外,爱略特还编辑了《哈佛经典》。 他曾经这样说道:如果一个人一天可以阅读十五 分钟,那么他将拥有渊博的学识。由于上述观点 受到质疑,他开始着手准备一系列的阅读书籍以 便证明自己的观点。爱略特在美国备受推崇,以 至于《哈佛经典》成为最畅销的出版物,几乎是 家家必备。

可以这样认为,从 1850 年到 1930 年,美国高等教育的最大亮点就是那些处于主导地位的雄才大略的大学校长们。在这些校长中,有安吉尔,有麦库什,有霍普金斯,还有爱略特自己。他们起到了中流砥柱的作用,不仅是因为他们给美国的学院或者大学带来的变化,更有另外一系列的原因。他们创建了真正有美国特色的高等教育体制。然而,最重要的是,他们凭借着自己超凡的知性魅力,使学生们发自内心地对学术界充满崇敬。

Charles William Eliot



"美"事一桩

哈佛大学(Harvard University)——全球最多亿万富豪就读过的大学

她与世界上第一条地下铁、第一条电话线生活在同一个城市!美国独立战争以来几乎所有的革命先驱都出自于她的门下,她被誉为美国政府的思想库。先后诞生了8位美国总统,40位诺贝尔奖得主和30位普利策奖得主。她的一举一动决定着美国的社会发展和经济的走向,商学院案例教学盛名远播。她培养了微软、IBM一个个商业奇迹的缔造者。她就是哈佛大学!

哈佛大学前身为剑桥学院。1636年10月28日, 马萨诸塞海湾殖民地议会通过决议,决定筹建一所像 英国剑桥大学那样的高等学府,拨款400万英镑。由 于创始人中不少人出身于英国剑桥大学,他们就把哈 佛大学所在的新镇命名为剑桥。1638年正式开学,第 一届学生共9名。1638年9月14日,牧师兼伊曼纽 尔学院院长的J. 哈佛病逝,他把一半积蓄720英镑 和400余册图书捐赠给这所学校。1639年3月13日,



马萨诸塞海湾殖民地议会通过决议,把这所学校命名为哈佛学院。

如今,哈佛大学已发展为拥有十个研究生院、四十多个系科、一百多个专业的大型院校。正式注

册有 18000 名学位候选人,以研究生为主,也包括本科生。另外还有 13000 名非学位学生在其扩展 学院学习一门或更多的课程。在哈佛大学工作的教职员工超过 14000 人,包括超过 2000 名的教授和 讲师。还有 7000 多教员在所属的各个医院工作。多年来,哈佛大学除了培养大量的美国学生外,还 接纳来自世界各国的大批留学生和访问学者。

历史上,哈佛大学的毕业生中共有8位曾当选为美国总统。他们是约翰·亚当斯(美国第二任总统)、约翰·昆西·亚当斯、拉瑟福德·伯查德·海斯、西奥多·罗斯福、富兰克林·罗斯福(连任四届)、约翰·肯尼迪、乔治·沃克·布什和巴拉克·侯赛因·奥巴马。哈佛大学的教授团中总共产生了34名诺贝尔奖得主。

哈佛早期的校训是"察验真理"(Veritas [1643])、"荣耀归于基督"(In Christ Gloriam [1650]),以及"为基督·为教会"(Christo et Ecclesiae [1692])。哈佛早期印章展示三本翻开的书本,两本面向上,一本面向下,象征着理性 (reason) 与启示 (revelation) 之间的动力关系。哈佛的一份最早期文献——1642年的学院法例——如此写道:"让每一位学生都认真考虑以认识神并耶稣基督为永生之源,作为他人生与学习的主要目标,因而以基督作为一切正统知识和学习的唯一基础。所有人既看见主赐下智慧,便当在隐秘处认真借着祷告寻求他的智慧。"



Answer

I. 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A

II. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. T 6. F

III. 1. stock 2. quadrupled 3. recruited 4. allowances

5. voluminous 6. dominance



A Humor 休闲时刻



A bit of advice for those about to retire. If you are only 65, never move to a retirement community. Everybody else is in their 70s, 80s, or 90s. So when something has to be moved, lifted or loaded, they yell, "Get the kid."

这里想对将要退休者提一点忠告。如果你只有 65 岁的话,千万别进退休社区。因为那里人人都七八十岁或者八九十岁了。每当要搬东西、抬东西或者装东西时,他们就叫喊,"让小的干吧"。



19 Developments in Agriculture

农业发展

与交通和通信的发展同时发生的是农业方面的新进步。这些发展包括钢制犁耙、收割机、机械化割捆机和蒸汽式打谷机的使用。其中前两项——也就是钢制犁耙和收割机——对美国的农业产生了极其深远的影响。它们帮助大平原实现了规模化耕作。

Coinciding¹ with progress in transportation and communication were new advances in agriculture. Among these were the steel plow², the reaper³, the mechanical binder⁴, and the steam-driven thresher⁵. The first two—the steel plow and the reaper—had the most profound effect on agriculture in America in that they helped open the Great Plains to extensive farming.

Pioneers who began pushing into California and Oregon in the 1840s bypassed⁶ the Great Plains as uninhabitable⁷. Rain was sparse⁸, and the soil seemed unsuitable for farming. The "Great American Desert", as they called it, was best left to the Indians.

Then John Deere invented his steel plow in 1837. Previously, farmers had gotten along quite well with plows made of wood and iron. But wooden and iron plows could not handle the matted⁹ roots of the prairie¹⁰ grass of the Plains, nor the sticky soil surrounding these roots that clung to the blades and made plowing difficult. Deere's steel plow easily cut through the difficult

prairie grass and its gluelike soil. Suddenly, cultivation of the Plains

seemed a possibility.

But even with the steel plow, farming vast areas of the Plains was not practical because of a shortage of manpower. Using cradles¹¹ and sickles¹², many workers were needed to harvest grain and similar crops, and there were just not that many settlers living in the region. McCormick's reaper

solved that problem. His reaping machine could do the work of many men, and it could do it a lot faster. Together with the steel plow and advent¹³ of windmills for irrigation¹⁴, the Great American Desert was transformed into America's breadbasket.

Shortly after the reaper was invented, the mechanical binder appeared. The binder tied grain into sheaves¹⁵ as fast as it was cut. Using the new device, two men and a team of horses could harvest and bind several acres¹⁶ of wheat a day. Next came the steam-driven thresher, which separated grain from the stalks¹⁷ of wheat. And eventually, Deere introduced the first steel plow to be pulled by horses. One invention followed another, and the impact of the Industrial Revolution on agriculture was apparent everywhere.



🧩 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. coincide [ˌkəʊɪn'saɪd] vi. 一致,符合
- **2.** plow [plau] n. 犁 v. 耕,犁,耕地,费力穿过,艰苦前进,在考试中被淘汰
- **3.** reaper ['riːpə] n. 收割者, 收割机
- **4. binder** ['baɪndə] *n*. 装订工,包扎者,包扎工具,[法律]临时契约
- **5.** thresher ['θre[ə(r)] n. 脱粒机, 打谷机, [鱼]长尾鲨
- 6. bypass ['baɪpɑːs; (US) 'baɪpæs] n. 旁路 vt. 设旁路, 迂回
- 7. uninhabitable ['ʌnɪn'hæbɪtəbl] adj. 不适于人居住的
- 8. sparse [spɑ:s] adj. 稀少的, 稀疏的
- 9. matted ['mætɪd] adj. 有席子的,缠结的,纠缠的,无光泽的,暗淡的
- **10. prairie** ['preərɪ] *n*. 大草原, 牧场, <美方>林间小空地
- **11. cradle** ['kreɪdl] n. 摇篮,发源地,支船架 vt. 将……放在摇篮内
- **12. sickle** ['sɪkl] *n*. 镰刀
- **13.** advent ['ædvənt] n. (尤指不寻常的人或事)出现,到来
- 14. irrigation [ˌɪrɪˈgeɪ[ən] n. 灌溉, 冲洗
- 15. sheave [[iːv] n. 滑车轮, 槽轮 vt. 捆
- **16.** acre ['eɪkə] n. 英亩, 地产, 大片田地
- 17. stalk [sto:k] n. 茎,柄,梗,秆



Expression 词句荟萃

- **1. coincide (with)** 同时发生;相同;极为相似;相接;相交
 - e.g. The strike was timed to coincide with the party conference.

那次罢工选择在召开政党大会的同一时间举行。

The present position of the house coincides with that of an earlier dwelling.

这栋房子现在的位置恰与原住宅的位置一样。

The interests of employers and employees do not always coincide.

雇主和雇员的利益并不总是一致的。

- 2. transform (from) (into) 使改变形态; 使改变外观(或性质); 使改观
 - e.g. The photochemical reactions transform the light into electrical impulses.

光化学反应使光变为电脉冲。

A new color scheme will transform your bedroom.

新的色彩调配将使你的卧室焕然一新。

It was an event that would transform my life.

那是能够彻底改变我的一生的一件事。

- 3. separate (from) (使)分离,分散;隔开;阻隔;分居;区分;区别
 - e.g. Those suffering from infectious diseases were separated from the other patients.

传染病患者同其他病人隔离开来。

He separated from his wife after 20 years of marriage.

他和妻子在结婚20年后分居了。

The judges found it impossible to separate the two contestants.

裁判无法把两位参赛者分出高下。



Exercise 牛刀小试

- I. Write the correct letter in the blank.
- 1. _____ with progress in transportation and communication were new advances in agriculture.
 - A. Cosigning
- B. Considering
- C. Coinciding

	_	_	
2. The steel plow an	d the reaper had the mos	st effect on agricu	lture in America.
A. profound	B. propound	C. confound	
3. Pioneers who be	gan pushing into Califo	rnia and Oregon in the 1840s	the
Great Plains.			
A. bystander	B. bypassed	C. byway	
4. Next came the ste	eam-driven thresher, whi	ich separated grain from the	of wheat.
A. swanks	B. stalks	C. swales	
5. The impact of the	Industrial Revolution o	on agriculture was	everywhere.
A. apparent	B. appetent	C. appetite	
II. Write true (Γ) or false (F).		
1 The steel p	low and the reaper help	ed open the Great Plains to extensiv	e farming.
2 John Deer	e invented his steel plow	v in 1937.	
3 With the s	teel plow, farming vast a	areas of the Plains seemed practical.	
4 McCormic	k's reaper could do the	work of many men.	
5 Using the	mechanical binder, two	o men and a team of horses could	harvest and bind
several acres of wheat a day.			
6 The "Great American Desert" was best left to the Indians.			
III. Complete tl		ne correct form of the words	_
mat irrigation gluelike advent sheave sparse transfor			
1. Rain was and the soil seemed unsuitable for farming in the 1840s.			
2. Wooden and iron plows could not handle the roots of the prairie grass of the			
Plains.			
3. Deere's steel ploy	w easily cut through the	difficult prairie grass and its	soil.
4. Together with the	steel plow and	of windmills for	the Great
		into America's breadbasket.	
5. The binder tied g	rain into	as fast as it was cut.	
	~		

参考译文

与交通和通信的发展同时发生的是农业方面的新进步。这些发展包括钢制犁耙、收割机、机 乏,械化割捆机和蒸汽式打谷机的使用。其中前两 由项——也就是钢制犁耙和收割机——对美国的农 要之业产生了极其深远的影响。它们帮助大平原实现 此等了规模化耕作。

19世纪40年代,前往加利福尼亚州和俄勒 冈州的第一批淘金者认为大平原不适宜生存,因 此绕道而行。那里降雨量稀少,土地贫瘠,不适 于耕作。这片被称作"美国大沙漠"的平原便拱 手留给了印第安人。

1837年,约翰·迪尔发明了钢制犁耙。以前,农民们一直使用的是木制和铁制犁耙,而且用得还不错。但是木制和铁制的犁具处理不了缠结在一起的草根和附着在上面的黏性土壤,根部的黏土粘在铁锹上会使耕种变得十分困难。迪尔的钢制犁耙能轻易地切断这种牧草并且甩掉像胶水似的黏土。瞬间,在大平原上耕种变为可能。

但即使是使用了钢制犁耙,由于劳动力缺乏,耕作广袤的大平原仍然是不切实际的想法。由于只能使用支架和镰刀,收割麦子和谷物就需要大量的工人,而该地区的定居人数远未能满足此需求。麦考马克的收割机恰巧可以解决这个问题。他的收割机不仅在工作量上可以等同于众多工人,而且速度还更快。再加上钢制犁耙和风车灌溉技术的使用,昔日的"美国大沙漠"变成了富饶的产粮大地。

就在收割机发明不久,机械化割捆机也诞生了。割捆机将收割后的粮食立刻捆扎成束。借助于这些新设备,两个人和几匹马便可在一天之内完成数公顷小麦的收割和捆扎。接下来发明的蒸汽式打谷机可将小麦的麦秆和谷粒分离开来。最后,迪尔又采用马匹来牵拉钢制犁耙。一个接一个发明的诞生,使得工业革命带给农业的影响无所不在。

Answer

- I. 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A
- II. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T 6. T
- III. 1. sparse 2. matted 3. gluelike 4. advent; irrigation; transformed 5. sheaves



"美"事一桩

美国大平原

美国大平原是世界上著名的平原之一,它实际上一直延伸到加拿大。在美国境内,它的基本界限是:西起落基山山麓的海拔 1800 米等高线一带;东到密西西比河谷地,大约沿着等高线为海拔 300 米的位置;北到加拿大的萨斯喀彻温 (Saskatchewan);南到得克萨斯州的南部。美国学术界对于大平原的东部界线有不同的认识,一般认为在西经 97°附近。

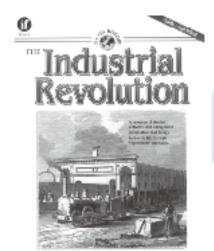


大约在公元 1600 年前,大平原一直人口稀少。19世纪中期,白人逐渐西迁,一步步地向美国中西部侵入,并且在大平原上定居下来。他们赶走了印第安人,以家养的牛群代替几乎被他们灭绝的野牛群,后来又发展了牧羊业,逐渐形成以畜牧业为主的经济。直到19世纪的80年代,这时恰逢一个较长的湿润周期(约14年),而且当时小麦的价格又很高,于是许多天然牧场被开垦为农田。但好景不长,又出现了干旱年,低于

正常年份的降水使农作物受到严重威胁,也使得农场主无利可图,只能废弃撩荒。等到又一个湿润期到来时,又照旧循环一次。这样做导致了严重的恶性循环。因为草原被毁后,牧草极难恢复,致使土地裸露,抗蚀力减弱,一遇到严重干旱及大风时,灾难就不可避免了。最典型的是 20 世纪 30 年代的 "黑风暴",它是上述恶性循环的集中表现。人类在 1934 年 5 月 12 日曾遭遇过一次历史上罕见的严重灾害。在这一天,从加拿大的西段边境与美国西部草原相邻接的几个州,刮起了一股尘雾,以每小时 60~100 英里的速度向东推进。这股尘雾卷走了美国西部干旱地区的三亿吨肥沃表土,跨越全美国 2/3 的领土,一直到达美国的东海岸,最后将土倾泻在离岸几百英里的大西洋中。这就是历史上著名的 "黑风暴"。长 1500 英里、南北宽约 900 英里、厚度达 2 英里的巨大尘土带,使得当时美国的冬小麦严重减产,小麦产量约比过去 10 年的平均产量减少了 51 亿千克。

从那以后,大平原的农业引起了各方关注,人们采取了一些措施,逐步使得该区的农业生产稳定下来。这些措施主要可归纳为:①扩大灌溉;②机械化;③增施化肥;④利用杀虫剂及除草剂;⑤加强保护土壤。

现在的大平原已经成为美国的"面包篮"(Bread basket)。



Slums¹ and Sweatshops²

贫民窟和血汗工厂

第二次工业革命期间,美国工厂、矿井和条件极差的血汗工厂中大批辛苦劳作的工人均是来自北欧和 东欧的移民。工厂主们更喜欢雇佣这些工人,因为这些工人的工资可以更低,而这些移民愿意干任何可以 找得到的工作。

A large majority of the workers who toiled³ in American's factories, mines, and "sweatshops" during the Second Industrial Revolution were immigrants from southern and eastern Europe. Owners preferred to hire them because they would work for lower wages, and the immigrants themselves were eager to take any job they could find. And because their pay was so low, these newcomers to America were forced to live under the worst possible conditions.

Some men came to America alone, hoping to make their "fortunes" and return to their families in the old country. They were called "birds of passage". As such, they paid as little for lodging as possible. Some shared one room in an apartment with as many as 12 other men. They spread mattresses⁴ on the floor in rows, there being nothing else in the room except a stove. Sometimes two men shared the

same mattress. The man who worked during the day used the mattress at night, while the night worker claimed it during the day.

Sweatshops were makeshift⁵ factories set up in sheds⁶ or tenement⁷ houses when factories could not house all of the workers. Some sweatshops were of the home variety, where entire families labored from dawn to well into the night trying to earn enough money for life's barest⁸ necessities.

Most sweatshops were concentrated in the garment⁹ industry. "Sweaters" bought or rented



sewing machines and set up shop in tenements. Often, an entire family, its boarders, and nearby neighbors toiled away in several dark rooms for as long as 16 hours a day. Their job was to sew together pre-cut pieces of garment: fronts, backs, sleeves, cuffs¹⁰, and so on. Even the youngest of children helped by performing such simple tasks as threading needles and snipping¹¹ off loose threads. A hard-working child could add from 50c to \$1.50 a week to a family's income.

Other families worked equally long hours

in their pathetic¹² apartments making such things as cigars and artificial flowers. What they earned for their efforts barely put food on the table. Making artificial flowers, a family had to make 144 flowers to earn 10c! As in the garment sweatshops, children worked alongside their parents. There was little time for playing or studying.

In time, laws were passed making sweatshops illegal. But for many years, they were as much a part of the manufacturing scene as factories.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. slum [slʌm] n. 贫民窟 vi. 访问贫民区
- **2.** sweatshop ['swet∫ p] n. 血汗工厂(指工人劳动条件差、工作时间长、工资低的工场或工厂)
- 3. toil [tɔɪl] n. 辛苦,苦工,网,罗网,圈套 vi. 苦干,跋涉,费力地做
- **4. mattress** ['mætrɪs] *n*. 床垫,空气垫,(用以护堤的)沉床
- 5. makeshift ['meɪk[ɪft] n. 将就,凑合,权宜之计 adj. 权宜之计的,凑合的
- **6. shed** [∫**ed**] *n*.棚,小屋,工棚,货棚
- 7. tenement ['tenɪmənt] n. 房屋, 住户, 租房子
- **8. bare** [beə] *adj*. 赤裸的,无遮蔽的,空的
- 9. garment ['gaːmənt] n. 衣服,外衣,外表
- **10.** $\operatorname{cuff}\left[\operatorname{kAf}\right] n$. 袖口,裤子翻边,护腕,手铐 vt . 给……上袖口,给……上手铐
- **11. snip** [snɪp] v. 剪断
- **12. pathetic** [pəˈθetɪk] *adj.* 可怜的,悲惨的



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. force into/to 强迫, 迫使(某人做某事)
 - e.g. The President was forced to resign .

总统被迫辞职。

I was forced to take a taxi because the last bus had left.

最后一班公共汽车已经开走, 所以我只好坐了一辆出租汽车。

- 2. set sb./sth. up 资助; 诬陷; 建起; 安装好; 引发
 - e.g. He denied the charges, saying the police had set him up.

他否认那些指控,说警察冤枉他了。

The police set up roadblocks on routes out of the city.

警察在城外的路上设置了路障。

The slump on Wall Street set up a chain reaction in stock markets around the world.

华尔街股价暴跌在全球股票市场上引起了连锁反应。

- 3. toil away/up (长时间)苦干,辛勤劳作;艰难缓慢地移动;跋涉
 - e.g. I've been toiling away all day trying to get this work finished.

我整天苦干,想把这项工作赶完。

They toiled up the hill in the blazing sun.

他们冒着炎炎烈日艰难地一步一步爬上山冈。

- 4. snip off (快速)剪去,剪掉
 - e.g. snip off the ends

剪去末端

snip the corner off the carton of milk

剪掉盛牛奶的纸盒的边角



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.			
1. The man who worked during the day used the mattress at night, while the night worker			
	_ it during the day.		
A. slept	B. claimed	C. reclaimed	
2. Some sweatshops	were the home v	ariety.	
A. of	B. in	C. on	
3. "Sweaters" bought	t or rented sewing mach	ines and set up shop in	
A. tenants	B. tournaments	C. tenements	
4. An entire family, i	ts boarders, and nearby	neighbors away in several dark rooms	
for as long as 16 ho	ours a day.		
A. foiled	B. toiled	C. soiled	
5. The youngest of c	hildren helped by perf	orming such simple tasks as threading needles and	
of	f loose threads.		
A. snipping	B. skipping	C. slipping	
 II. Write true (T) or false (F). 1 A large majority of the workers who toiled in American's factories, mines, and "sweatshops" during the Second Industrial Revolution were immigrants from southern and 			
eastern Asia.			
2 Some men came to America alone, hoping to make their "fortunes" and return to their			
families in the old country.			
3 Some shared one apartment with as many as 12 other men.			
4 A hard-working child could add from 50c to \$1.50 a day to a family's income.			
5 Making artificial flowers, a family had to make 14 flowers to earn 10c.			
6 As in the garment sweatshops, children worked alongside their parents. There was			
little time for playing or studying.			
	\sim		

III. Complete the sentences with the words given.

makeshift cuff pathetic garment bare lodge			
<u>i</u>			
1. The immigrant workers paid as little for as possible.			
2. Sweatshops were factories set up in sheds or tenement houses.			
3. Entire families labored from dawn to well into the night trying to earn enough money for life's			
necessities.			
4. Most sweatshops were concentrated in the industry.			
5. The workers job was to sew together pre-cut pieces of garment: fronts, backs, sleeves,			
, and so on.			
6. Other families worked equally long hours in their apartments making such			
things as cigars and artificial flowers.			

参考译文

件极差的血汗工厂中大批辛苦劳作的工人均是来 自南欧和东欧的移民。工厂主们更喜欢雇佣这些 工人,因为这些工人的工资可以更低,而这些移 民愿意干任何可以找得到的工作。也正是因为这 样极低的工资,这些初到美国的人们被迫生活在 最艰苦的环境中。

一些人是单独来到美国的,期待可以在此淘 金之后荣归故里。这些人被称为"候鸟"。正是 如此,这些人会用尽可能少的钱来解决住的问题。 有时甚至 13 个人共租公寓里的一间房子。他们 将床垫一排排铺在地板上,房间里除了一只火炉 外一无所有。有时两人挤在同一张床垫上。上白 班的人晚上睡床垫, 白天则给上夜班的人使用。

第二次工业革命期间,美国工厂、矿井和条 : 时,便在棚屋房和廉价公寓里建立起血汗工厂, 作为权宜之计。一些血汗工厂是家庭式的,在那 里所有的家庭成员从清晨工作到深夜,仅仅是为 了挣取能够维持基本生活的工资。

> 大多数的血汗工厂都集中在服装业。工厂主 们购买或者租赁缝纫机器,在廉价公寓里开设工 厂。通常,一家人——血汗工厂的寄膳者们,还 有附近的邻居都会在几个黑屋子里每天苦干 16 个小时之久。他们的工作就是将事先裁好的服装 各部分缝在一起:正面、背面、袖子和袖口等等。 甚至最小的孩子都来帮些简单的忙,比如穿针引 线和剪去线头。一个努力工作的孩子可以在一个 星期内为家庭增加 50 美分到 1.5 美元的收入。

其他的家庭也在他们各自条件恶劣的小屋里 当工厂的厂房不能容纳所有工人进行劳作 : 辛苦地工作同样长的时间,制作一些香烟或者是 假花。这样辛苦挣来的钱仅仅能保证他们桌上的 : 终于,相应的法律通过了,规定血汗工厂是 食物。就拿制作假花来说,一家人得做 144 朵才 : 不合法的。但在很多年中,它们在大规模制造业 能挣到 10 美分!而在服装业的血汗工厂里,孩子 : 的舞台上扮演了同正规工厂一样重要的角色。 们就在父母旁边工作,很少有时间玩耍或者学习。

"美"事一桩

美国移民文化

20 世纪初,美国是个拥有 7600 万人口的国家。到了 1990 年,美国的人口增长到 2.49 亿,其 中 43% 的人口增长来自 20 世纪的移民以及他们的子孙。专家们估计,按目前移民的速度和人口 增长的规律,到 2050年,美国人口将增加到 3.97亿。届时美国国内就不存在以欧洲白人为多数 的族裔。有专家认为,到那时,如果把融入主流社会并同美国人通婚的拉丁美洲后裔和亚裔仍然 看作少数族裔, 那么美国白人也将是少数族裔。

在尼克松政府中担任国家安全事务助理和国务卿的基辛格博士、在卡特政府中担任国家安全 事务助理的布热津斯基及美国前国务卿奥尔布赖特女士,都是在东欧国家出生然后到美国定居的 外来移民。尤其是基辛格和布热津斯基两人,他们讲话都带有浓重的外国口音。按照美国法律规定, 他们可以在政府中担任要职,也可以竞选国会议员,但是没有资格当总统。

已故总统肯尼迪的家庭是爱尔兰移民的后裔,他的曾祖父是北爱尔兰威克斯福德人,因为大 饥荒于 1848 年移民美国波士顿。波士顿所在的马萨诸塞州现在是肯尼迪家庭的政治势力范围,其 他政客长期以来很难击败肯尼迪家族候选人。美国前参谋长联席会议主席沙利卡什维利将军也是 东欧移民。海湾战争期间担任美国参谋长联席会议主席的黑人将军鲍威尔,是牙买加移民的后裔。

翻开美国人的家谱史,除了未被赶尽杀绝的土生土长的印第安人外,其他美国人都是外国移 民或移民的后裔。美国是个人口不断增长的移民国家,移民美国的有合法的,也有非法的。许多 现在是正宗美国人的老祖宗, 当初可能也是非法进入美国的。

从 1820 年到 1993 年, 共有 5400 万移民因为贫困、饥荒、政治和宗教迫害来到美国。他们来 自爱尔兰、北欧、波兰、捷克、斯洛伐克、匈牙利、意大利和亚洲各国。1980 年至 1990 年,美

跟美国学生一起学英语:高级版

国接纳了950万合法与非法移民,可以说是20世纪的大移民。

在今天的美国,人们可能没有注意到这样一个事实:在纽约的意大利后裔和移民的人数,竟然是威尼斯城人口的两倍;美国的犹太人超过以色列的总人口;汽车城底特律的波兰人多于波兰大多数城市的人口;爱尔兰后裔和移民的数量超过爱尔兰的总人口。今天的美国事实上是个多民族的大熔炉,是个松散的联合国,是一个没有任何民族人口占多数的国家。

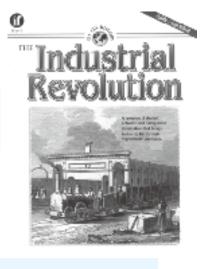
Answer

- I. 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. A
- II. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F 6. T
- III. 1. lodging 2. makeshift 3. barest 4. garment 5. cuffs 6. pathetic



The Age of Steam 蒸汽时代

21



詹姆斯·瓦特并不是第一个为蒸汽和它的潜力着迷的人。亚历山大的希罗,一位古代科学家,其实已在公元一到三世纪制作了一台小型叶轮机。

James Watt was not the first person to be fascinated by steam and its potential¹ power. Hero of Alexandria, an ancient scientist, actually built a small steam turbine between the first and third centuries. But since the Egyptians and Greeks had an abundance² of slaves to do their work for them, they simply laughed at the thought of any kind of labor-saving device.

Interest in steam power continued through the Middle Ages and into the modern era. The first practical use of steam power came about in 1712 when an Englishman named Thomas Newcomen built a steam engine to pump water from coal mines. Although the engine worked, it was far from cost-effective. Its huge appetite³ for fuel used almost as much coal as it helped to mine.

Young James Watt was working as an instrument maker at the University of Glasgow in 1763, when one of Newcomen's machines was brought to him for repair. Watt studied

the engine and hit upon a way to improve it. To Newcomen's machine, which worked by forcing steam into a hollow cylinder⁴ to move a piston⁵ back and forth, Watt added a condenser⁶ with an air pump. He also added a steam jacket to maintain the necessary heat in the cylinder. The result was that Watt's engine shot steam into both ends of cylinder, causing it to move at a much faster rate. Whereas Newcomen's slow-moving engine was practical only as a pump, Watt's new device offered all sorts of possibilities for the future.

Watt was granted a patent for his steam engine in 1769. Five years later, in 1774, he received the backing⁷ of Matthew Boulton, a



跟美国学生一起学英语:高级版

Birmingham manufacturer. This sent Watt on his way to financial success, and by the time he retired in 1880, he was a wealthy man.

By 1785, Watt's steam engine had replaced water power in some of England's cotton mills. The engine also made it possible to build factories in places other than next to rivers and streams. Thus, factories could be located in cities where a large supply of cheap

labor was available for work. By 1804, an engine similar to Watt's was being used to run Richard Trevithick's steam locomotive⁸. And, three years later, Robert Fulton's steamboat, the Clermont, driven by steam engine, chugged⁹ up the Hudson River from New York City to Albany at the breath-taking speed of almost 5 miles per hour!



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1. fascinate** ['fæsɪneɪt] vt. 使着迷, 使神魂颠倒 vi. 迷人, 有吸引力
- 2. abundance [ə'bʌndəns] n. 丰富, 充裕
- 3. appetite ['æpɪtaɪt] n. 食欲,胃口,欲望,爱好
- 4. cylinder ['sɪlɪndə] n. 圆筒,圆柱体,汽缸,柱面
- **5. piston** ['pɪstən] n. [机]活塞
- 6. condenser [kən'densə] n. 冷凝器, 电容器
- 7. backing ['bækɪη] n. 衬背,援助,支持者,赞助者
- 8. locomotive [ˌləʊkəˈməʊtɪv] n. 机车,火车头 adj. 运动的
- **9. chug** [t [∧g] v. 发出轧轧声 n. 轧轧声



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. fascinated by sth./to see,learn, etc. 入迷的, 极感兴趣的
 - e.g. I've always been fascinated by his ideas.

我总是对他的想法极感兴趣。



They were fascinated to see that it was similar to one they had at home.

他们发现这个和他们家中的那个相似, 极感兴趣。

2. appetite (for) 食欲;胃口;强烈欲望

e.g. Don't spoil your appetite by eating between meals.

不要在两餐之间吃东西,以免影响胃口。

The public have an insatiable appetite for scandal.

公众对丑事总是喜闻乐道。

3. hit upon/on 突然有个好主意; 偶然想到妙点子

e.g. She hit upon the prefect title for her new novel.

她灵机一动为自己的新小说找到了一个理想的书名。

He hit upon a new plan.

他想出一个新计划。

4. back and forth 反复来回

e.g. ferries sailing back and forth between the islands

往返于岛屿之间的渡船

5. other than 除……以外; 不同; 不同于; 不

e.g. We are going away in June but other than that I'll be here all summer.

我们6月份外出;除此以外,我整个夏天都在这里。

I have never known him to behave other than selfishly.

我从没见过他不自私。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.

1. James Watt was not the first person to be

by steam and its potential power.

A. fascinated

B. fashioned

C. festinated

0 G'	16 1 1		
		d a(n) of slaves to do their work for	
them, they simply laughed at the thought of any kind of labor-saving device.			
A. avoidance	B. abidance	C. abundance	
3. Its huge	_ for fuel used all	most as much coal as it helped to mine.	
A. appraise	B. appetite	C. paradise	
4. Watt studied the eng	gine and	a way to improve it.	
A. hit upon	B. sit upon	C. hit away	
5. Watt was granted a	for	his steam engine in 1769.	
A. patient	B. patent	C. potent	
II. Write true (T)	or false (F).		
1 Hero of Alex	candria, an ancier	nt scientist, built a small steam turbine between the first	
and third centuries.			
2 Young Jame	es Watt was wor	king as a steam machine maker at the University of	
Glasgow in 1763.			
3Although The	omas Newcomen	's engine worked, it was far from cost-effective.	
4 Watt's engine	shot steam into bo	th ends of cylinder, causing it to move at a much faster rate.	
5 Whereas Newcomen's slow-moving engine was practical only as a pump, Watt's new			
device offered all so	rts of possibilities	s for the future.	
6 The Clermont was driven at the speed of almost 5 kilometers per hour!			
III. Complete the	e sentences wi	th the correct form of the words given.	
backing cylinder supply piston chug pump			
1. Thomas Newcomen built a steam engine to water from coal mines.			
2. In 1774, Watt received the of Matthew Boulton.			
3. Factories could be located in cities where a large of cheap labor was available			
for work.			
4. Robert Fulton's steamboat, the Clermont, driven by steam engine, up the			
Hudson River.			
5. Newcomen's machine worked by forcing steam into a hollow to move a			
back and forth.			
	\sim		

参考译文

詹姆斯·瓦特并不是第一个为蒸汽和它的潜力着迷的人。亚历山大的希罗,一位古代科学家,其实已在公元一到三世纪制作了一台小型叶轮机。但由于当时古埃及人和古希腊人拥有大量的奴隶来为他们工作,因此对任何可以节省劳动力的器械都嗤之以鼻。

对蒸汽力量的兴趣一直从中世纪持续到一个新时代。第一次将蒸汽力量进行实际利用的尝试出现于1712年,是一位名叫托马斯·纽科门的英国人制作了一台蒸汽引擎用于抽取矿井中的水。尽管引擎能够正常工作,但却花费巨大,很不划算。它惊人的耗煤量已经能够与它帮助生产出来的煤等同了。

1763年,年轻的詹姆斯·瓦特在格拉斯哥大学工作,制作乐器,当时纽科门的一台机器送来让他修理。瓦特仔细研究了这台引擎,突然想到一种改进的方法。纽科门原来的机器采用的是将蒸汽压入中空的汽缸推动活塞前后移动的工作原理,瓦特就在其中加上了一个带空气泵的冷凝器。

他同时还增添了蒸汽保护罩来保持汽缸里必需的 温度。改进后,瓦特的引擎可将蒸汽快速射入汽 缸的两端,使其能以更快的速度转动。相比只能 用作泵的纽科门的慢速转动的引擎,瓦特的新器 械为未来的一切都提供了可能。

1769 年, 瓦特的新式蒸汽机获得专利。五年后, 也就是 1774 年, 他得到了一位名叫马修·博尔顿的伯明翰制造商的赞助。从此瓦特的财富开始积累,到 1880 年退休的时候, 他已家财万贯。

1785年时,瓦特的蒸汽机在英格兰的一些棉花作坊里已彻底代替了水车。蒸汽机也使得在其他地方建造工厂成为可能,而不再用依河或依溪而建了。这样,工厂就可建在有大量廉价劳动力可利用的城市里了。1804年,一台与瓦特的蒸汽机很相似的引擎被运用于理查德·特里维西克发明的蒸汽式火车头中。三年后,罗伯特·富尔顿的蒸汽船,用蒸汽引擎驱动的克莱蒙特号,沿着哈得逊河一路以惊人的每小时大约五英里的速度从纽约飞驶到奥尔巴尼!

Answer

- I. 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B
- II. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T 6. F
- III. 1. pump 2. backing 3. supply 4. chugged 5. cylinder; piston



科学生活

\bigcirc

美国高速铁路运输

美国的铁路运输,自 1828 年第 1 列旅客列车投入运营后,100 多年来为美国的经济繁荣作出了重要贡献。1956 年,美国通过《州际高速公路法》(Interstate Highway Act),兴建了四通八达的高速公路网。随着汽车和飞机制造业的迅速发展,美国的铁路运输特别是客运业在逐渐萎缩。目前全国运营的客运铁路绝大部分仅限于市内的轻轨交通,城市间的大部分铁路只用于货运,而其中 40% 则用来运煤。但进入 20 世纪 80 年代以后,由于交通等基础设施建设跟不上经济迅速发展的需要,高速公路堵塞,机场拥挤,也由于能源、环境问题同交通运输的矛盾日益突出,迫使人们重新考虑铁路运输,高速铁路计划因此应运而生。

高速铁路运输,一般定义为最高速度 200km/h 以上的铁路运输。美国运输部联邦铁路管理局 (FRA)1997 年 9 月发表的《美国高速地面交通》研究报告,把速度 145km/h 以上都看作"高速"。根据《美国高速地面交通》定义,高速铁路运输根据所采用的技术不同,可以分为 3 种类型。

- (1) 普通高速铁路(Accelerail,简称 ACC)。对现有铁路进行适当改造升级后,采用先进的摆式列车技术,最高速度 145~240km/h。如瑞典的 X2000、西班牙的 Talgo、意大利的 Pendolino、英国的 InterCity225、华盛顿——纽约的 Metroliners。
- (2) 新型高速铁路(New HSR, 简称 NHSR)。一般需要新建线路,最高速度可达 320km/h。如法国的 TGV、德国的 ICE 和日本的新干线。
- (3) 磁悬浮铁路 (Magnetic levitation, 简称 Maglev)。需要新建线路,最高速度可超过 500km/h,采用全新的磁悬浮列车技术。

由于种种原因,美国高速铁路的发展远远落后于其他发达国家。美国前任总统奥巴马在一次演讲中用惯用的排比方式说道:"我们需要······能满足 21 世纪需求的智能型运输系统,一个省时高效的系统,一个能减少拥挤、提高生产力的系统,一个能减少空气污染、创造就业岗位的系统。"但是美国政府是否能将"说道"转化成"轨道",人们还要拭目以待。

The Ups and Downs of the 1930s and 1940s

20世纪三四十年 代沉浮记



今天的历史学家把女权运动划分为两个阶段。第一阶段开始于1848年的纽约州色内加瀑布市,结束于1920年的《二十世纪修正案》的颁布。第二阶段开始于20世纪60年代早期,延续至今。

Historians today divide the struggle for women's rights into two movements. The first began in Seneca Falls in 1848 and concluded with the *19th Amendment* in 1920. The second began in the early 1960s and is still going on.

The period between the two movements was a time of inaction¹ for women reformers. Many felt that the *19th Amendment* gave them all the rights they needed and that the job was completed. Some took up other causes or devoted themselves to family life. Then the Great Depression of 1929 began, and enthusiasm for reform waned² as people struggled just to put food on the table.

The Great Depression was a terrible time in America's history. Banks closed, businesses failed, and millions of workers lost their jobs. Harsh economic conditions actually resulted in women losing some of the rights they had gained. Because so many men were

out of work, over half of the states introduced laws forbidding married women to hold jobs. Misguided officials believed that a woman with a husband did not need to work. They failed to consider that many men could not or would not find jobs. Also, it was necessary in many families for both the husband and the wife to work just to make ends meet.

The Great Depression lasted until the outbreak of World War II in 1939. Jobs became available almost overnight as America began manufacturing supplies and war materials for those countries fighting the Axis³ Powers. When the United States entered the war in 1941, a tremendous opportunity opened up for women. So many men left for the armed forces that women were needed to fill jobs in factories and other places. Women worked in munitions⁴ plants and shipyards. They worked in steel mills and meatpacking plants. They served as

painters, plumbers, electricians, and garbage truck drivers. They operated cranes⁵ and drove trucks and buses. Women of all ages, moved by patriotism, offered their services. In Georgia, even the widow of Confederate⁶ General James Longstreet signed up to work the morning shift at the Bell Aircraft Factory in Marietta. She was 80 years old!

Thousands of women who did not enter the labor force during the war volunteered their services in other ways. Some served as volunteer police clerks, couriers, air-raid wardens⁷, and fire watchers. More than three million joined the Red Cross. Another million worked in USO⁸ centers across the nation. And then there were thousands who joined the women military branches: the WAAC⁹, the WAVE¹⁰, and the women Marines. Many served as nurses and more than a thousand became noncombat¹¹ pilots.

After the war, everyone agreed that America could not have achieved victory without the help of its working women. Women literally¹² kept the nation running during those trying¹³ years. Yet, when the war was over, a strange thing happened. The women who had worked so hard in the factories and at other jobs formerly held by men were fired. They were told to go home and resume their former

lives. The jobs they had performed for four years were now needed by the fighting men being released from the services.

In spite of setbacks¹⁴, women recorded some achievements during the depression and war years. One of the most notable¹⁵ was the appointment by President Roosevelt of Frances Perkins as Secretary of Labor in 1933. Ms. Perkins was the first person of her sex to hold a cabinet¹⁶ position. When asked by a reporter if being a woman was a handicap¹⁷, she quipped¹⁸: "Only in climbing trees!"





🧲 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. inaction [ɪnˈæk[ən] n. 无行动,不活动,无为,怠惰,迟钝
- 2. wane [weɪn] vi. 变小, 亏缺, 衰落, 退潮, 消逝, 呈下弦
- 3. Axis [ˈæksɪs] 轴心国: 1936年的德意联盟,后来包括在第二次世界大战中反对同盟国的日本和其他国家
- 4. munition [mjuːˈnɪʃən] n. 军需品 vt. 供给军需品
- **5. crane** [kreɪn] *n*. 起重机
- 6. Confederate [kənˈfedərɪt] n. 同盟者, 同盟国 adj. 同盟的, 联合的 v. (使)联盟, (使)联合
- 7. warden ['wo:dn] n. 典狱官, 看守人, 学监, 区长, (供煮食的)—种冬梨
- 8. USO (United Service Organizations) 美国劳军联合组织
- 9. WAAC (Women's Army Auxiliary Corps) 妇女辅助军团
- 10. WAVE (Women Accepted for Volunteer Emergency Services)美国海军志愿紧急服役妇女队
- 11. noncombat [non'kombæt] adj. 非战斗的
- 12. literally ['lɪtərəlɪ] adv. 照字面意义,逐字地
- **13. trying** ['traɪɪη] *adj*. 难受的,费劲的,令人厌烦的
- **14. setback** ['setbæk] *n*. 顿挫, 挫折, 退步, 逆流, (疾病的)复发
- **15. notable** ['nəʊtəbl] *adj*. 值得注意的,显著的,著名的
- **16. cabinet** ['kæbɪnɪt] *n*. (有抽屉或格子的)橱柜, <美>内阁
- **17.** handicap ['hændɪkæp]v. 妨碍,使不利,阻碍 n. 障碍,不利条件
- **18. quip** [kwɪp] v. 说讽刺的话,嘲弄



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. take up 继续;接下去;占用(时间);占据(空间)
 - e.g. The band's new album takes up where their last one left off.
 - 这个乐队的新唱片集是接上一集的乐曲录制的。

I won't take up any more of your time.

我不再占用你的时间了。

2. devote yourself/sth. to 献身; 致力; 专心

e.g. She devoted herself to her career.

她全力倾注于自己的事业。

I could only devote two hours a day to the work.

我一天只能在这个工作上花两个小时。

3. result in 造成; 导致

e.g. The cyclone has resulted in thousands of deaths.

气旋已经造成了成千上万的人死亡。

These policies resulted in many elderly people suffering hardship.

这些政策使得许多老人饱受困苦。

4. sign up (使)签约受雇(或入伍);报名(参加课程)

e.g. The company has signed up three top models for the fashion show.

为时装表演,公司签约聘了三名顶尖模特。

He signed up for the English course on IELTS in the winter vacation.

他寒假报名参加了雅思英语课。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the con	rrect letter in the	e blank.	
1. The period bet	ween the two mov	rements was a time of	_ for women
reformers.			(
A. inaction	B. interaction	C. infraction	
2. Some women re	formers	other causes or devoted themselves	to family life.
A. took in	B. took up	C. take down	
3. Enthusiasm for r	reform	as people struggled just to put food on the	ne table.
A. waned	B. wined	C. wonted	

4. It was necessary in many families for both the husband and the wife to work just to make		
meet.		
	and	C. ends
_	cturing suppli	es and war materials for those countries fighting the
Powers.		
	Aces	
6. In Georgia, even the wid work.	low of Confed	lerate General James Longstreet to
A. signed in B.	signed up	C. signed out
7. Women	kept the na	tion running during those trying years in war.
A. literaturally B.	literately	C. literally
 Write true (T) or false (F). Historians today divide the struggle for women's rights into two movements. Because so many men were out of work, most states introduced laws forbidding married women to hold jobs. The Great Depression lasted until the outbreak of World War II in 1937. Thousands of women who did not enter the labor force during the war volunteered their services in other ways. More than three million women joined the Red Cross. The women who had worked so hard in the factories and at other jobs formerly held by men were fired. 		
III. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words given.		
misguide noncombat munitions harsh cabinet setback patriotism		
1 economic conditions actually resulted in women losing some of the rights they		
had gained.		
2 offic	cials believed	that a woman with a husband did not need to work.
3. Women of all ages, move	ed by	, offered their services.
4. Some women worked in plants and shipyards.		

		1
}	5. More than a thousand women became pilots.	
	6. Ms. Perkins was the first person of her sex to hold a position.	
}	7. In spite of, women recorded some achievements during the depression and	١
\	war years.	1
)

参考译文

今天的历史学家把女权运动划分为两个阶: 段。第一阶段开始于 1848 年的纽约州色内加瀑 布市,结束于1920年的《二十世纪修正案》的 颁布。第二阶段开始于 20 世纪 60 年代早期, 延 续至今。

两次女权运动之间的那段时期是女权运动改 革家们无所作为的日子。很多人认为《二十世纪 修正案》已经赋予了她们所需要的全部权利,女 权运动已经成功。于是一些人从事了其他工作, 还有一些人成为家庭主妇。从1929年的大萧条 开始,人们将精力都放在了解决温饱上,改革的 热情也就减退了。

大萧条在美国的历史上是段不堪回首的岁 月。银行倒闭,企业破产,大量工人失业。恶劣 的经济条件最终导致女性的一些权利得而复失。 由于众多男性失去工作,超过半数的州都通过了 禁止已婚女性就业的法律。误入歧途的官员们坚 信妇女们只要有丈夫就不需要工作了。他们并没 有考虑到很多男性也不能或将要找不到工作。同 时,对很多家庭来说,只有夫妻双方都外出工作 : 作;成千上万的人参加了妇女军团分支:妇女辅 才能使收支相抵。

大萧条一直持续到 1939 年第二次世界大战 爆发。由于美国开始大量生产补给和军需品供给 与轴心国交战的国家,一夜之间就业岗位剧增。 1941 年美国参战时,一个对女性来说绝好的机会 出现了。大量男性应征入伍,只得靠女性去工厂 或其他地方代替他们的工作。女性工作的身影在 军工厂、造船厂里随处可见。她们还出现在钢铁 厂、肉类加工厂。她们当起了油漆工、管道工、 电工、垃圾车司机,也开始操作起重机,驾驶卡 车和公交车。不论老少,女性们被强烈的爱国精 神鼓舞着, 贡献着她们的力量。在佐治亚州, 甚 至连南部邦联军将军詹姆斯: 朗斯特里特的遗孀 都去位于玛丽埃塔的贝尔飞机厂上早班了。当时 她已 80 岁高龄!

战争期间,成千上万没有在工厂工作的女性 也都用别的方式做些力所能及的事情。一些妇女 义务承担起派出所职员、信差、防空观察员和火 险观察员的责任。超过300万的女性加入了红十 字会:100万在遍布全国的美国劳军联合组织工 : 助军团,海军志愿紧急服役妇女队和女子舰队等; 战斗机飞行员。

战后,国人一致认为,如果没有参加工作的 妇女的支持,美国就不可能取得成功。毫不夸张, 在那段痛苦的年代里,是女性在促使整个国家正 常运作。但是, 当战争结束后, 奇怪的现象又发 生了。那些在原本是男性占据的岗位和工厂上努 力工作的女性被解雇了。她们被迫重新当起家庭: 趣地讽刺道: "只有在爬树的时候!"

一些当起了护士;还有超过1000的妇女成为非 : 主妇,继续以前的生活。从战场上凯旋的男人们 需要她们之前从事了四年的工作。

> 尽管遭受了挫折,女性在大萧条和战争年代 还是取得了一些成绩。最显著的一点就是1933 年罗斯福总统任命弗朗西斯·珀金斯为劳工部长。 珀金斯夫人是第一位进入内阁的女性。当被一个 记者问及自己的性别是否是自己的劣势时,她风

"美"事一桩

美国经济大萧条

1929 年 10 月 29 日, 纽约证券交易所里所有的人都陷入了抛售股票的漩涡之中。股指从之前的 363 最高点骤然下跌了平均 40 个百分点,成千上万的美国人眼睁睁看着他们一生的积蓄在几天内烟 消云散。这是美国证券史上最黑暗的一天,是美国历史上影响最大、危害最深的经济事件,影响波及 西方国家乃至整个世界。此后,美国和全球进入了长达 10 年的经济大萧条时期。因此,这一天被视/ 作大萧条时期开启的标志性事件,由于正值星期二,被称为"黑色星期二"。

记录美国历史的《光荣与梦想》中曾这样写道:"千百万人只因像畜生那样生活,才免于死亡。" 这一情景描述的正是美国大萧条时期的民生状况。

1932年,约有200万美国人到处流浪——其中有25万以上在16~21岁之间。这些被当时媒体称 为大萧条时期的"漂泊无依的人"中,有两手空空的佃农;有因为大旱三年、背井离乡的农场主;有 一大批刚从大学毕业,找不到工作的青年;还有忽然失业的愁眉苦脸的中年汉子带着生病的婴儿一 这些人天天奔波,居无定所。

而这些人当中不乏衣冠楚楚的中产阶级——意气风发的银行行长或者曾在著名报纸上发表评论的 知名作家,如今却在夜间敲门讨饭或蜷缩在城市排队领面包的人群里。

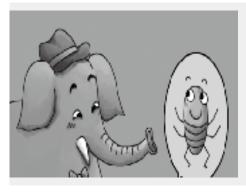
这是自1929年"黑色星期二"开启的大萧条以来,美国人真实生活的一个缩影。据1932年9月的《财 富》杂志估计,美国有3400万成年男女和儿童没有任何收入,此数字接近人口总数的28%。而且这

跟美国学生一起学英语:高级版

个研究报告一如其他报告,那正在另一种地狱里受难的1100万户农村人口是不包括在内的。

在农村,特别是中西部的农民们,生活极其惨淡。由于农产品价格惨跌,大量农场主破产。宾 夕法尼亚州的乡下人吃野草根、蒲公英;肯塔基州的人吃紫罗兰叶、野葱、勿忘我草、野莴苣以及一 向专给牲口吃的野草。城里的孩子妈妈在码头上徘徊等待,一有腐烂的水果蔬菜扔出来,就上去同野 狗争夺。蔬菜从码头装上卡车,她们就跟在后边跑,有什么掉下来就捡什么。中西部地区一所旅馆的 厨师把一桶残菜剩羹放在厨房外的小巷里,立即有十来个人从黑暗中冲出来抢。

A Humor 休闲时刻



Let Me Take It Down

An elephant said to a mouse, "no doubt that you are the smallest and most useless thing that I have ever seen."

"Please, say it again. Let me take it down ." The mouse said. "I will tell a flea what I know."

为我所用

一头大象对一只小老鼠说:"你无疑是我见过的最小、最没用的东西。" "请再说一遍,让我把它记下来。"老鼠说,"我要讲给我认识的一只 跳蚤听。"



I. 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. C

II. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T 6. T

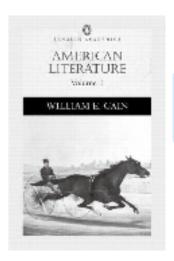
III. 1. Harsh 2. Misguided 3. patriotism 4. munitions 5. noncombat 6. cabinet 7. setbacks



Part 4 American Literature 美国文学

美国文学表现为平民化和多元化。美国人富于阳刚之气,热爱自由,追求以个人幸福为中心的美国梦。美国人民写出的作品正展现出了这些特点。美国文学大致出现过3次繁荣,分别为:19世纪前期形成的民族文学,第一次世界大战和第二次世界大战后的两度繁荣。

本章摘选了七篇美国文学史上名作家之经典之作,以飨读者。我们能够从中大致领略到美国 文学的风采,当然我们也希望能激发读者对美国文学的兴趣,在将来有兴趣阅读更多精彩的美国 文学作品。



Journal of the First Voyage to America

第一次美洲航海日志

Christopher Columbus 克里斯托弗·哥伦布

克里斯托弗·哥伦布是历史上著名的探险家之一。他很早就离开了他在意大利的家,开始航海。他学习了拉丁文,并阅读了马可·波罗关于富饶的亚洲的描述。本文节选自哥伦布第一次去往美洲的航海日志。

This account begins nine days after Columbus landed on San Salvador.

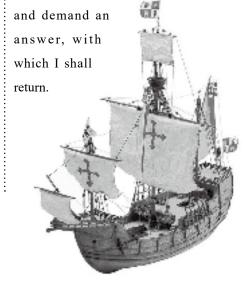


SUNDAY,OCT.21ST[1492]. At 10 o'clock, we arrived at a cape of the island, and anchored, the other vessels in company. After having dispatched¹ a meal, I went ashore, and found no habitation save a single house, and that without an occupant²; we had no doubt that the people

had fled in terror at our approach, as the house was completely furnished³. I suffered nothing to be touched, and went with my captains and some of the crew to view the country. This island even exceeds the others in beauty and fertility⁴. Groves of lofty⁵ and flourishing⁶ trees are abundant, as also large lakes, surrounded and overhung by the foliage7, in a most enchanting8 manner. Everything looked as green as in April in Andalusia. The melody of the birds was so exquisite9 that one was never willing to part from the spot, and the flocks of parrots obscured the heavens. The diversity in the appearance of the feathered tribe from those of our country is extremely curious. A thousand different sorts of trees, with their fruit were to be met with, and of a wonderfully delicious odor. It was a great affliction to me to be ignorant of their natures, for I am very certain they are all valuable; specimens¹⁰ of them

and of the plants I have preserved¹¹. Going round one of these lakes, I saw a snake, which we killed, and I have kept the skin for your Highnesses; upon being discovered he took to the water, whither we followed him, as it was not deep, and dispatched him with our lances; he was seven spans in length; I think there are many more such about here. I discovered also the aloe tree, and I am determined to take on board the ship tomorrow, ten quintals of it, as I am told it is valuable. While we were in search of some good water we came upon a village of the natives about half a league from the place where the ships lay; the inhabitants on discovering abandoned their houses, and took to flight, carrying off their goods to the mountain. I ordered that nothing which they had left should be taken, not even the value of a pin. Presently we saw several of the natives advancing towards our party, and one of them came up to us, to whom we gave some hawk's bells and glass beads, with which he was delighted. We asked him in return, for water, and after I had gone on board the ship, the natives came down to the shore with their calabashes¹² full, and showed great pleasure in presenting us with it. I ordered more glass beads to be given them, and they promised to return the next day. It is my wish to fill all the water casks of the ships at this place, which being executed¹³, I shall

depart¹⁴ immediately, if the weather serve, and sail round the island, till I succeed in meeting with the king, in order to see if I can acquire any of the gold, which I hear he possesses. Afterwards I shall set sail for another very large island which I believe to be Cipango, according to the indications¹⁵ I receive from the Indians on board. They called the Island Colba, and say there are many large ships, and sailors there. This other island they name Bosio and inform me that it is very large; the others which lie in our course, I shall examine on the passage, and according as I find gold or spices¹⁶ in abundance, I shall determine what to do, at all events I am determined to proceed on to the continent, and visit the city of Guisay where I shall deliver the letters of your Highnesses to the Great Can,





🥰 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1. dispatch** [dɪs'pæt[] v. 派遣, 发送; 迅速处理; 吃完; 立即处死 *n*. 派遣; 杀死、处决
- 2. occupant ['pkju:pənt] n. 占有者,居住者
- 3. furnish ['f3:nI[] ν . 装备,摆设,尤指配备家具等所需之物;供应,提供
- **4. fertility** [fs: 'tɪlɪtɪ] *n*. 肥沃, 丰产, 多产, 人口生产, 生产力
- **5. lofty** ['lp(:)ftr] *adj*. 高高的, 崇高的, 高傲的, 高级的
- 6. flourish['flʌrɪʃ] vi. 繁荣, 茂盛
- 7. foliage ['fəʊlɪdʒ] n. 树叶, 植物
- 8. enchant[ɪn't[ɑ:nt] vt. 施魔法, 使迷惑
- 9. exquisite ['ekskwɪzɪt] adj. 优美的,高雅的,精致的,剧烈的,异常的,细腻的,敏锐的
- 10. specimen ['spesimən] n. 样品,标本
- **11. preserve** [prɪˈzɜːv] *vt.* 保护,保持,保存,保藏
- 12. calabash[ˈkæləbæʃ] n. [植]炮弹果, 葫芦
- **13.** execute['eksɪkju:t] vt. 执行,实行,完成,处死,制成,[律]经签名盖章等手续使(证书)生效
- **14. depart** [dɪˈpɑːt] *vi*. 离开,起程,不按照,逝世
- **15.** indication[ˌɪndɪˈkeɪ[ən] n. 指出,指示,迹象,暗示
- **16. spice** [spaɪs] *n*. 香料,调味品,趣味,意味,情趣



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. exceed (the) others in sth. 在某些方面超过……
 - e.g. He exceeds the others in both playing football and playing basketball.

他足球、篮球都打得比别人好。

In this factory, workers who exceed others in production will get reward of it.

在这家工厂, 生产上超前者会因此而得到奖赏。

2. show great pleasure in doing sth. 十分高兴做某事

e.g. He shows great pleasure in watching foreign movies.

他十分喜欢看外国电影。

My daughter shows great pleasure in playing toy bricks.

我女儿十分喜欢玩积木。



Exercise 牛刀小试

1. We arrived a cape of the island. A. in B. at C. on 2. We had no doubt that the people had fled in terror our approach. A. on B. after C. at 3. A thousand different sorts of trees, with their fruit were to be met with, and of a delicious odor. A. wonderful B. wonderfully C. wondering 4. One of them came to us. A. up B. toward C. down 5 round one of these lakes, I saw a snake.		
2. We had no doubt that the people had fled in terror our approach. A. on B. after C. at 3. A thousand different sorts of trees, with their fruit were to be met with, and of a delicious odor. A. wonderful B. wonderfully C. wondering 4. One of them came to us. A. up B. toward C. down 5 round one of these lakes, I saw a snake.		
A. on B. after C. at 3. A thousand different sorts of trees, with their fruit were to be met with, and of a delicious odor. A. wonderful B. wonderfully C. wondering 4. One of them came to us. A. up B. toward C. down 5 round one of these lakes, I saw a snake.		
3. A thousand different sorts of trees, with their fruit were to be met with, and of a delicious odor. A. wonderful B. wonderfully C. wondering 4. One of them came to us. A. up B. toward C. down 5 round one of these lakes, I saw a snake.		
delicious odor. A. wonderful B. wonderfully C. wondering 4. One of them came to us. A. up B. toward C. down 5 round one of these lakes, I saw a snake.		
A. wonderful B. wonderfully C. wondering 4. One of them came to us. A. up B. toward C. down 5 round one of these lakes, I saw a snake.		
4. One of them came to us. A. up B. toward C. down 5 round one of these lakes, I saw a snake.		
A. up B. toward C. down 5 round one of these lakes, I saw a snake.		
5 round one of these lakes, I saw a snake.		
A W		
A. Went B. Go C. Going		
6. I ordered more glass beads to be given them, and they promised the next day.		
A. to return B. returning C. return		
7. After dispatched a meal, I went ashore.		
A. have B. having C.had		
8. While we were in search some good water we came upon a village.		
A. of B. for C. with		

II. Write true (T) or false (F).
1 The author and his group arrived at the island on Oct. 21st, a Saturday.
2 After having dispatched a meal, the author went ashore, and found that there were
some habitations.
3 The author thinks that this island exceeds the others in beauty and fertility.
4 The author knew very well about the natures of the trees on the island.
5 The author gave some hawk's bells and glass beads to the local person he met on the
island, and asked him in return for some money.
6After the author leaving this island, he shall set sail for another very large island.
III. Complete these sentences.
1. At 10 o'clock, we arrived at a cape of the island, and anchored, the other vessels
company.
2. I discovered also the aloe tree, and I am determined to take board the ship tomorrow.
3. I succeed (meet) with the king.
4. According to the indications I receive the Indians on board.
5. I shall depart immediately, in order see if I can acquire any of the gold.
6. I determined to proceed on to the continent.

参考译文

这篇日志开始于哥伦布在圣萨尔瓦多岛登陆 : 子里任何的东西, 然后带着我的船长们和一些船 后的第九天。

们到达了这个岛的一个海角, 抛锚停下了, 船队 的其他船只也跟随着我们。匆匆吃了一顿饭之后, 我上了岸,发现除了一栋空无一人的房子之外, 这里没有人烟的迹象。我们相信房子的主人由于 :: 去,成群的鹦鹉连天空都能遮没。真是奇怪,这 我们的到来深感恐惧,弃家而逃,因为房子里面 : 里的鸟类和我们国家的鸟类看起真是十分不同! 生活用具样样俱全。我向留下的人下令不许动房 : 这里还有上千种不同的树木,树上长满果实,那

员去视察整个岛屿。比起其他岛屿, 这座岛屿之 1492年10月12日,星期日。10点钟,我: 美丽富饶可谓更胜一筹。这里到处都是高大而繁 茂的小树林,还有那被绿树浓荫笼罩环绕的湖水, 景色十分优美迷人。整个世界就像4月的安达卢 :西亚一样青翠欲滴。鸟儿歌声动听,让人不忍离 香味真是使人垂涎欲滴。非常遗憾的是我不知道 : 些水。当我回到船上时,那些当地人已经带着装 这些树的名字,但我确信它们都很有价值,所以 我保存了这些树和植物的标本。在湖周围视察时, 我们发现了一条蛇,它逃到了水里,我们一直跟 着它,因为水不深,最后用长矛把它捉住了。我 们杀了它,保留蛇皮献给陛下。这条蛇有七个掌 距那么长,我估计这一带还会有很多这样的蛇。 同时我们还发现了芦荟树,因为听说这种树很值 钱, 所以我决定明天往船上运 10 英吨。在我们 寻找饮用水的过程中,见到了一座当地人的村庄, 这个村庄距我们停船的地方大约有 1.5 英里。那 里的居民一发现我们就弃家逃走了,还把值钱的 东西都带到了山里。我命令我们的人不许拿走任 何东西,哪怕是只值一根针的东西。此时我们看 到几个当地人朝我们的方向走来,而其中一个来 到了我们面前,我们给了他一些鹰铃和玻璃珠, 这使他感到很高兴。作为交换,我们向他要了一:

满水的葫芦来到了岸边,而且表现得很高兴。我 下令再给他们一些玻璃珠,他们答应第二天再来。 我希望能在这个地方将船上的水桶装满水,如果 天气许可,就马上离开,绕岛航行,直到我找到 这里的国王。因为我听说它拥有很多黄金,所以 想试试看能否得到一些。之后我打算向另外一个 很大的岛屿进发,根据船上的印第安人提供的信 息,我相信这个岛就是西潘哥岛。那些印第安人 称这个岛为寇芭岛,说那里有很多大船和船员。 还有一个岛屿他们称为波西亚岛, 据说这个岛也 很大。对于在我们航线上的其他岛屿,我也会在 经过的时候进行探查,并且根据是否发现了大量 的黄金或香料来决定我的行动。无论发生什么事 情,我决心向大陆航行,访问那个城市,把陛下 的信呈给大汗,并且带着他的答复回来。

关于日志

日志是什么

简单地说,日志是一种心情的载体,一种对内心深处的窥探。日志可以记录你生活的点点滴滴, 把你内心的世界表露出来,写日志有助于更好地诠释自己的内心世界。

日志的好处

日志能够保留自己的回忆,也能记录当时的心情、思想,以后看起来很有趣。如果你从事一些比 较重要的工作,日志可能成为工作总结、经验累积,等等。日志还是一种生活态度,你在及时地记录 自己生活的点点滴滴,你在认真地思考生活。同时,日志会让你的心灵得到释放。

"美"事一桩

哥伦布简介

克里斯托弗·哥伦布(约 1451—1506),生于意大利热那亚,卒于西班牙巴利亚多利德,一生从事航海活动,先后移居葡萄牙和西班牙,相信大地球形说,认为从欧洲西航可达东方的印度和中国。在西班牙国王支持下,先后 4 次出海远航 (1492~1493 年, 1493~1496 年, 1498~1500 年, 1502~1504 年),到达了西欧人认为的美洲大陆,他开辟了横渡大西洋到美洲的航路。先后到达巴哈马群岛、古巴、海地、多米尼加、特立尼达等岛,也因此成为名垂青史的航海家。他在帕里亚湾南岸首次登上美洲大陆,考察了中美洲洪都拉斯到达连湾 2000 多千米的海岸线;认识了巴拿马海峡;发现并利用了大西洋低纬度吹东风,较高纬度吹西风的风向变化。他误认为到达的大陆是印度,并称当地人为印第安人。

哥伦布十分崇拜曾在热那亚坐过监狱的马可·波罗,他读过《马可·波罗游记》,十分向往印度和中国。当时,地圆说已经很盛行,哥伦布也深信不疑。他先后向葡萄牙、西班牙、英国、法国等国国王请求资助,以实现他向西航行到达东方国家的计划,都遭拒绝。一方面,地圆说的理论尚不十分完备,许多人不相信,把哥伦布看成江湖骗子。一次,在西班牙关于哥伦布计划的专门的审查委员会上,一位委员问哥伦布:即使地球是圆的,向西航行可以到达东方,回到出发港,那么有一段航行必然是从地球下面向上爬坡,帆船怎么能爬上来呢?对此问题,滔滔不绝、口若悬河的哥伦布也只有语塞。另一方面,当时,西方国家对东方物质财富需求除传统的丝绸、瓷器、茶叶外,最重要的是香料和黄金。其中香料是欧洲人起居生活和饮食烹调必不可少的材料,需求量很大,而本地又不生产。当时,这些商品主要经传统的海、陆联运商路运输。经营这些商品的既得利益集团也极力反对哥伦布开辟新航路的计划。哥伦布为实现自己的计划,到处游说了十几年。直到1492年,西班牙王后慧眼识英雄,她说服了国王,甚至要拿出自己的私房钱资助哥伦布,才使哥伦布的计划得以实施。

1492 年 8 月 3 日,哥伦布受西班牙国王派遣,带着给印度君主和中国皇帝的国书,率领三艘百十来吨的帆船,从西班牙巴罗斯港扬帆出大西洋,直向正西航去。经 70 个昼夜的艰苦航行,1492 年 10 月 12 日凌晨终于发现了陆地。哥伦布以为到达了印度,后来才知道,哥伦布登上的这块土地,属于现在中美洲巴勒比海中的巴哈马群岛,他当时为它命名为圣萨尔瓦多。1493 年 3 月 15 日,哥伦布回到西班牙。此后他又三次重复他的向西航行,又登上了美洲的许多海岸。直到 1506 年逝世,他一直认为他到达的是印度。后来,一个叫作亚美利哥的意大利学者,经过更多的考察,才知道哥伦布到达

的这些地方不是印度,而是一个原来不为人知的新大陆。哥伦布发现了新大陆。但是,这块大陆却用证实它是新大陆的人的名字命了名:亚美利加洲。后来,对于谁最早发现美洲不断出现各种微词。哥伦布发现新大陆的结论是毋庸置疑的。这是因为当时,欧洲乃至亚洲、非洲整个旧大陆的人们确实不知大西洋彼岸有此大陆。至于谁最先到达美洲,则是另外的问题,因为美洲土著居民本身就是远古时期从亚洲迁徙过去的。亚洲、大洋洲的先民航海到达美洲也是极为可能的,但这些都不能改变哥伦布到达新大陆的影响。印第安人,又称美洲原住民,是除因纽特人外的所有美洲土著居民的总称。美洲土著居民中的绝大多数为印第安人,本来分布于美国各地,是东亚蒙古人种美洲支系。印第安人所说的语言称为美洲原住民语言,或者称为北美洲蒙古人种印第安语。印第安人的祖先来自中国北方,大约是在4万年前从亚洲渡过白令海峡到达美洲的,或者是通过冰封的海峡陆桥过去的。他们与亚洲同时代的人有某些相同的文化特色,例如用火、驯犬及采用某些特殊仪式与医疗方法。考古学和人类学认为印第安人的祖先和中国人有着一样的体质。在美国有阿塔巴斯干人、阿尔贡金人、易洛魁人、苏人和马斯科基人等,印第安人是美洲最早的居民。他们之所以被称为"印第安人",主要是因为当年哥伦布等探险者,以为他们到达的"新陆地"是印度,错误地称当地居民为"印第安"人(源自"印度"一词的英文发音)。

Answer

I. 1. B 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. A

II. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F 6. T

III. 1. in 2. on 3. in meeting 4. from 5. to 6. am

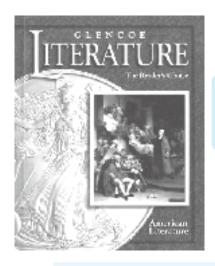
名言锦句

Living without an aim is like sailing without a compass.

生活而无目标, 犹如航海而无指南针。

—J.Ruskin

——J.鲁斯金



The 24 Autobiography

富兰克林自传

Benjamin Franklin 本杰明・富兰克林

本文节选自《富兰克林自传》。《富兰克林自传》一书记录了本杰明·富兰克林— -这位美国开国元 勋从默默无闻到功勋卓著的奋斗历程。



It was about this time that I conceived the bold and arduous¹ project of arriving at moral perfection. I wished to live without committing any fault at any time; I would conquer all that either natural inclination², custom, or company might lead me into. As I knew, or thought I knew, what was right and wrong, I did not see why I might not always do the one and avoid the other. But I soon found I had undertaken a task of more difficulty than I had imagined. While my care was employed in guarding against one fault, I was often surprised another; habit

took the advantage of inattention³; inclination was sometimes too strong for reason. I concluded, at length, that the mere speculative⁴ conviction that it was our interest to be completely virtuous was not sufficient to prevent our slipping; and that the contrary habits must be broken, and good ones acquired and established, before we can have any dependence on a steady, uniform rectitude of conduct. For this purpose I therefore contrived the following method.

In the various enumerations of the moral virtues⁵ I had met with in my reading, I found the catalog more or less numerous, as different writers included more or fewer ideas under the same name. Temperance, for example, was by some confined to eating and drinking, while by others it was extended to mean the moderating every other pleasure, appetite, inclination, or passion, bodily or mental, even to our avarice and ambition. I proposed to myself, for the sake of clearness, to use ideas; and I included under thirteen names of virtues all that at that time occurred to me as necessary or desirable, and annexed to each a short precept, which fully expressed the extent I gave to its meaning.

These names of virtues, with their precepts, were:

1. TEMPERANCE6

Eat not to dullness; drink not to elevation⁷.

2. SILENCE

Speak not but what may benefit others or yourself; avoid trifling8 conversation.

3. ORDER

Let all your things have their places; let each part of your business have its time.

4. RESOLUTION9

Resolve to perform what you ought; perform without fail what you resolve.

5. FRUGALITY¹⁰

Make no expense but to do good to others or yourself; i.e., waste nothing.

6. INDUSTRY¹¹

Lose no time; be always employed in something useful; cut of all unnecessary actions.

7. SINCERITY¹²

Use no hurtful deceit; think innocently and justly, and, if you speak, speak accordingly.

8. JUSTICE

Wrong none by doing injuries, or omitting the benefits that are your duty.

9. MODERATION13

Avoid extremes; forbear resenting injuries so much as you think they deserve.

10.CLEANLINESS

Tolerate no uncleanliness in body, clothes, or habitation.

11. TRANQUILITY¹⁴

Be not disturbed at trifles, or at accidents common or unavoidable.

12. CHASTITY¹⁵

Rarely use venery but for health or offspring, never to dullness, weakness, or injury of your own or another's peace or reputation.

13. HUMILITY¹⁶

Imitate Jesus and Socrates.

My intention being to acquire the habitude¹⁷ of all these virtues, I judged it would be well not to distract my attention by attempting the whole at once but to fix it on one of them at a time; and, when I should be master of that, then to proceed another, and so on, till I should gone through the thirteen; and, as the previous acquisition 18 of some might facilitate the acquisition of certain others, I arranged them with that view, as they stand above. Temperance first, as it tends to procure that coolness and clearness of head, which is so necessary where constant vigilance was to be kept up, and guard maintained against the unremitting attraction of ancient habits and the force of perpetual temptations. This being acquired and established, Silence would be more easy; and my desire being to gain knowledge at the same time that I improved in virtue, and considering that in conversation it was obtained rather by the use of the ears than of the tongue, and therefore wishing to break a habit I was getting into of prattling, punning, and joking, which only made me acceptable to trifling company, I gave Silence the second place. This, and the next, Order, I expected would allow me more time for attending my project and my studies. Resolution, once become habitual, would keep me firm in my endeavors to obtain all the subsequent virtues; Frugality and Industry fleeing me from my remaining debt and producing affluence and independence, would make more easy the practice of Sincerity and Justice, etc., etc.

🥰 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. arduous [ˈɑːdjʊəs] adj. 费劲的,辛勤的,险峻的
- **2. inclination** [,ɪnklɪ'neɪ∫ən] *n*. 倾斜,弯曲,倾度,倾向,爱好
- 3. inattention [ˌɪnəˈtenʃən] n. 疏忽
- 4. speculative ['spekjulətɪv, -leɪt-] adj. 投机的
- **5. virtue** ['vɜːtjuː] *n*. 德行, 美德, 贞操, 优点, 功效, 效力, 英勇
- **6. temperance** ['tempərəns] *n*.节欲, 戒酒, 禁酒
- **7. elevation** [.elr'veɪ∫ən] *n*.上升,高地,正面图,海拔,提高,仰角,崇高,庄严
- **8. trifle** ['traɪfl] v. 开玩笑, 玩弄, 闲混, 浪费, 嘲弄
- 9. resolution [ˌrezəˈljuːʃən] n. 坚定,决心,决定,决议
- 10. frugality [fru:ˈɡælɪtɪ] n. 节俭, 节省
- 11. industry ['ɪndəstrɪ] n. 工业,产业,行业,勤奋
- **12. sincerity** [sɪnˈserətɪ] n. 诚挚,真实,真挚

- 13. moderation [ˌmɒdəˈreɪ[ən] n. 适度
- 14. tranquility [træŋˈkwɪlɪtɪ] n. 宁静
- **15.** chastity ['t∫æstɪtɪ] n. 纯洁,贞节;简洁
- 16. humility [hjuːˈmɪlɪtɪ] n. 谦卑
- 17. habitude ['hæbɪtjʊːd] n. 习俗
- **18. acquisition** [ˌækwɪˈzɪ∫ən] n. 获得,获得物



Expression 词句荟萃

1. be employed in doing 从事于……; 时间花在……上

e.g. He is employed in creating novels.

他把大部分时间花在小说创作上。

She used to employ herself in cooking after work.

下班后她常常把时间花在烹饪上。

- 2. at length 最后;详细地
 - e.g. We waited and waited. At length, they arrived.

我们等啊等,最后他们终于到了。

They discussed the problem at length.

他们详细讨论了这问题。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.

1. It was about this time that I conceived the bold and arduous project _____ arriving at moral perfection.

A.of

B. for

C. in

2. I would conquer a	ll that either natural	inclination, custom, company might lead me into.
A. nor	B. or	C. and
3. I did not see why	I might not always	the one and avoid the other.
A. do	B. did	C. done
4. While my care wa	is employed in gua	rding against one fault, I was often another.
A. surprising	B. surprise	C. surprised
5. I found the catalog	g more or r	numerous.
A. less	B. fewer	C. little
6. Different writers i	ncluded more or _	ideas under the same name.
A. less	B. fewer	C. little
7. Make no	but to do good to o	thers or yourself.
A. expense	B. expenses	C. expensing
8. I proposed to mys	elf, for the sake	clearness, to use ideas.
A. for	B. on	C. of
9. I had undertaken a	a task of more	than I had imagined.
A. difficult	B. hard	C. difficulty
10. I included unde	r thirteen names	of virtues all that at that time occurred me as
necessary or desi	rable.	
A. to	B. on	C. into
 II. Write true (T) or false (F). 1 The author found that the catalog are more or less numerous in the various enumerations of the moral virtues he had met with in his reading. 2 The author thinks that if temperance is acquired and established, Silence would be more difficult. 		
III. Complete th	ese sentences.	
1. I wished to live w	ithout (co	mmit) any fault at any time.
2. But I soon found	I had undertaken a	task more difficulty than I had imagined.
3. In the various enu catalog more or le		noral virtues I had met in my reading, I found the

	4. The contrary habits must broken.	}
)	5. I might not always do the one and avoid (other).)
	6. Frugality and Industry fleeing me my remaining debt.	١
	7. Temperance first, as it tends to procure that coolness and clearness of head, which is so	1
	necessary where constant vigilance was to be kept	
)	8. For this purpose I therefore contrived the (follow) method.	1
		1

参考译文

大胆而又艰巨的任务:达到道德上的完美境界。 我希望在生活中任何时候都不犯错误, 我要克服 所有可能导致我犯错误的因素,无论是自然的倾 向和习惯,还是我身边的人。根据我所知道的, 或那时候我认为我所知道的,正确和错误的标准, 我看不出为什么我不能一直遵循前者而同时避免 后者。可是很快我就发现我承担的这个任务比我 想象的更加困难。当我的注意力忙于戒备一个错 误的时候,我经常因为犯了另外一个错误而大吃 一惊。在我不注意的时候习惯就会占上风,而自 然的倾向有时候比理智要强大得多。最后我得出 一个结论,那就是:仅仅在思想上坚信完全的道 德对我们有好处,但并不足以阻止我们犯错误。 因此我们必须先打破那些反面的习惯, 养成并建 立好习惯,然后才能有一种始终如一的正直品行 让我们依靠。所以,为了达到这一目的,我设计 了以下方法。

根据我在阅读中见到的列举的各种美德,我 发现因为不同的作者在同一名字下会包含或多或 :

大约就在这个时候,我的脑子里酝酿了这个 :: 少的含义,所以这些列举的清单都比较长。比如 说"节制"这种美德,有些作者只把它限制在吃 饭和饮酒方面,而其他的作者则将它的含义扩展 到对各种享受的节制,包括食欲、意愿或肉体和 精神上的热爱,甚至还有我们的贪心和野心。为 了清楚起见,我建议我自己多用一些美德的名字, 每个名字上附加的意义少一点,而不能只用几个 名字,但每个名字中有很多含义。于是我列出了 十三种当时我认为是必要或值得拥有的美德,为 每种美德附加了一句短短的准则, 充分地表达了 我为其规定的含义范围。

这些美德和它们的准则是:

- 1. 节制 食不得过饱, 饮不可过量。
- 2. 沉默 避免无聊闲扯, 言谈必须对人有益。
- 3. 秩序 生活物品要放置有序, 工作时间要合理安排。

4. 果断

要做之事就下决心去做,决心做的事一定要完成。

5. 节俭

不得浪费,任何花费都要有益,不论是于人于己。

6. 勤劳

珍惜每一刻时间,去除一切不必要之举,勤 做有益之事。

7. 真诚

不损害他人,不使用欺骗手段。考虑事情要 公正合理,说话要依据真实情况。

- 8. 公正 不得损人利己,履行应尽的义务。
- 9. 适度 避免任何极端倾向,尽量克制报复心理。

10. 清洁 身体、衣着和居所要力求干净清洁。

11. 平静

戒除不必要的烦恼,即那些琐事、常见的和 不可避免的不顺利的事情。

12. 纯洁

除为健康和为后代考虑之外决不纵欲,决不 使身体虚弱,生活贫乏,不可损坏自己及他人的 声誉或安宁。

13. 谦虚

以耶稣和苏格拉底为榜样。

我的目的是将所有这些美德习惯化,所以我认为不应该一次尝试所有的美德,因为这样会分散我的注意力,而是应该一次只将注意力集中在一种美德上,当我获得了这一种以后,就继续进行下一种的培养,以此类推,一直到我培养了

所有的十三种美德。因为有些先培养的美德可能 会有助于其他一些美德的培养, 所以我按照上面 所示的顺序安排了这些美德。"节制"是第一个, 它可以使人拥有冷静清醒的头脑, 而这对我正是 极其必要的, 因为我要保持不断的警惕性, 来防 备旧习惯的持续吸引和反复不断的诱惑。在我获 得并且养成这种美德之后,"沉默"就比较容易了。 由于我希望在获取知识的同时能在道德上有所提 高,并且考虑在谈话中知识是利用耳朵而不是舌 头来得到的, 所以我希望能改掉闲聊、说双关语 和开玩笑的习惯,因为这个习惯只能使我被那些 琐屑而没有价值的人们接受。基于以上考虑,我 把"沉默"排在了第二位。我希望这个美德和下 面的"秩序",能使我有更多的时间来专注于自 己的工作和学习。而一旦"果断"成为习惯,我 就能在获得下面的美德的过程中更加坚决。"节 俭"和"勤劳"将使我从残留的债务中解脱出来, 变得富裕和独立,这会使"真诚"和"公正"的 实现更加容易,诸如此类,等等,等等。

Answer

- I. 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. C 10. A
- II. 1. T 2. F
- III. 1. committing 2. of 3. with 4. be 5. the other 6. from 7. up 8. following



名人轶事

\bigcirc

一分钟的改变

本杰明·富兰克林有一次接到一个年轻人的求教电话,并与他约好了见面的时间和地点。当年轻 人如约而至时,本杰明的房门大敞着,而眼前的房子里却乱七八糟、一片狼藉,年轻人很是意外。

没等他开口,本杰明就招呼道:"你看我这房间,太不整洁了,请你在门外等候一分钟,我收拾一下,你再进来吧。"然后本杰明就轻轻地关上了房门。

不到一分钟的时间,本杰明就又打开了房门,热情地把年轻人让进客厅。这时,年轻人的眼前展现出另一番景象——房间内的一切已变得井然有序,而且有两杯倒好的红酒,在淡淡的香气里漾着微波。

年轻人在诧异中,还没有把满腹的有关人生和事业的疑难问题向本杰明讲出来,本杰明就非常客气地说道:"干杯!你可以走了。"

手持酒杯的年轻人一下子愣住了,带着一丝尴尬和遗憾说:"我还没向您请教呢……"

"这些……难道还不够吗?"本杰明一边微笑一边扫视着自己的房间说,"你进来又有一分钟了。"

"一分钟······"年轻人若有所思地说,"我懂了,您让我明白用一分钟的时间可以做许多事情,可以改变许多事情的深刻道理。"

A Humor 休闲时刻



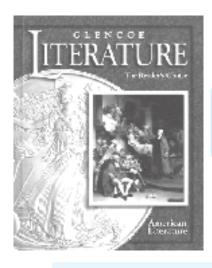
Teacher: Why are you late for school every morning?

Tom: Every time I come to the corner, a sign says,

"School—Go Slow".

老师,为什么你每天早晨都迟到?

汤姆:每当我经过学校的拐角处,就看见一个牌子上写着"学校 ——慢行"。



25

Nature

自然

Ralph Waldo Emerson 拉尔夫·沃尔多·爱默生

本文节选自爱默生的代表作《自然》。超验主义在《自然》中有所体现。爱默生的超验主义在美国文学史上的地位是独特的,其直接在文学上产生了浪漫主义文学。



Nature is a setting that fits equally well a comic or a mourning piece. In good health, the air is a cordial¹ of incredible virtue. Crossing a bare

common, in snow puddles², at twilight, under a clouded sky, without having in my thoughts any occurrence³ of special good fortune, I have enjoyed a perfect exhilaration⁴. I am glad to the brink⁵ of fear. In the woods too, a man casts off his years, as the snake his slough, and at what period soever of life, is always a child. In the woods, is perpetual⁶ youth. Within these plantations⁷ of God, a decorum and sanctity⁸ reign, a perennial⁹ festival is dressed, and the guest sees not how he should tire of them in a thousand years. In the woods, we return to

reason and faith. There I feel that nothing can befall me in life, — no disgrace, no calamity¹⁰, (leaving me my eyes,) which nature cannot repair. Standing on the bare ground, — my head bathed by the blithe¹¹ air, and uplifted into infinite space, — all mean egotism vanishes. I become a transparent¹² eye-ball; I am nothing; I see all; the currents of the Universal Being circulate through me; I am part or particle of God. The name of the nearest friend sounds then foreign and accidental¹³: to be brothers, to be acquaintances¹⁴, — master or servant, is then a trifle and a disturbance. I am the lover of uncontained and immortal beauty. In the wilderness, I find something more dear and connate¹⁵ than in streets or villages. In the tranquil landscape, and especially in the distant line of the horizon, man beholds somewhat as beautiful as his own nature.

The greatest delight which the fields and

woods minister, is the suggestion of an occult relation between man and the vegetable. I am not alone and unacknowledged. They nod to me, and I to them. The waving of the boughs in the storm, is new to me and old. It takes me by surprise, and yet is not unknown. Its effect is like that of a higher thought or a better emotion coming over me, when I deemed I was thinking justly or doing right.

Yet it is certain that the power to produce this delight, does not reside in nature, but in man, or in a harmony of both. It is necessary to

use these pleasures with great temperance. For, nature is not always tricked in holiday attire, but the same scene which yesterday breathed perfume and glittered as for the frolic¹⁶ of the nymphs¹⁷, is overspread with melancholy¹⁸ today. Nature always wears the colors of the spirit. To a man laboring under calamity, the heat of his own fire hath sadness in it. Then, there is a kind of contempt of the landscape felt by him who has just lost by death a dear friend. The sky is less grand as it shuts down over less worth in the population.

Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1. cordial** ['kɔːdjəl] n. 兴奋剂, 兴奋性饮料 adj. 热忱的, 诚恳的, 兴奋的
- **2. puddle** ['pʌdl] *n*. 水坑, 胶土, 污水坑
- **3. occurrence** [əˈkʌrəns] *n*. 发生, 出现, 事件, 发生的事情
- **4. exhilaration** [ɪgˌzɪləˈreɪ [ən] n. 令人高兴,愉快
- **5. brink** [brɪηk] *n*. (峭岸、崖的)边缘
- 6. perpetual [pəˈpetjʊəl] adj. 永久的
- 7. plantation [plæn'teɪʃən] n. 耕地,种植园,大农场,森林,人造林,殖民地
- 8. sanctity['sæŋktɪtɪ] n. 圣洁
- 9. perennial [pəˈrenɪəl] adj. 四季不断的,终年的,长期的,永久的,(植物)多年生的
- 10. calamity [kəˈlæmɪtɪ] n. 灾难,不幸事件
- **11. blithe** [blaɪð] *adj*. 愉快的,高兴的
- 12. transparent [træns'pærənt] adj. 透明的,显然的,明晰的
- **13.** accidental [ˌæksɪˈdentl] adj. 意外的,非主要的,附属的 n. 非本质属性,次要方面
- **14. acquaintance** [əˈkweɪntəns] n. 相识, 熟人

跟美国学生一起学英语: 高级版

- **15. connate**['kɒneɪt] *adj.* 天生的, 先天的, 同族的
- **16. frolic** ['frolik] *n*. 嬉闹 *vi*. 嬉戏 *adj*. 嬉戏的, 欢乐的
- **17.** nymph [nɪmf] n. [希腊神话][罗马神话]居于山林水泽的仙女,美丽的少女
- 18. melancholy ['melənkəlɪ] n. 忧郁 adj. 忧郁的



Expression 词句荟萃

1. be glad to do sth. 乐于, 高兴做某事, 表示荣幸

e.g. I am very glad to meet you again.

能再次见到你,我真的很高兴。

They are glad to visit the Summer Palace.

他们很高兴参观颐和园。

- 2. be certain that... 一定, 肯定
 - e.g. I am not at all certain that he is honest.

我根本不能肯定他是不是诚实的。

It is certain that friendly trade relation would be established through face-to-face talk.

通过面对面的交流, 肯定可以建立良好的业务关系。

- 3. It is necessary to do sth. 有必要做……
 - e.g. It is necessary for teenagers to broaden horizon by traveling.

青少年有必要通过旅游来开阔自己的视野。

It is necessary to prepare a necklace for friend's wedding.

参加朋友的婚礼有必要准备一条项链。



Exercise 牛刀小试

- I. Write the correct letter in the blank.
- 1. In the woods too, a man casts his years.
 - A. off
- B. of

C. out

2. Standing on the	bare ground, — my	head by the blithe air.
A. bathe	B. bathed	C. bath
3. I am the lover of	uncontained and	beauty.
A. immortal	B.mortal	C. moral
4. Its effect is like t	hat of a higher thoug	ght or a better emotion coming me.
A. on	B.in	C. over
5. The power to pr	roduce that delight,	does not reside in nature, but in man, or in a harmony
both.		
A.of	B.on	C. off
6. I was thinking ju	ıstly or doing	
A. rightly	B. right	C. just
7. It takes me	surprise, and yet is	not unknown.
A. by	B. into	C. of
8. The sky is less g	rand as it shuts	over less worth in the population.
A. down	B. on	C./
9. Its is like t	hat of a higher thoug	tht or a better emotion coming over me.
A. affect	B. influence	C. effect
II. Write true (T) or false (F).	
1 Nature a	lways wears the colo	ors of the spirit.
2 Nature i	s a setting that fits ed	qually well a comic or a mourning piece.
III. Complete t	hese sentences.	
1. In the woods too	, a man casts off his	years, the snake his slough.
2. Yet it is certain that the power to produce this delight does not reside nature.		
3. To a man laboring under calamity, the heat of his own fire hath (sad) in it.		
4. The waving of the boughs in the storm, is new me and old.		
5. For, nature is not always tricked in holiday attire, but the same scene which yesterday		
breathed perfun	ne and glittered as	the frolic of the nymphs, is overspread with
melancholy today	y.	

自然是一个舞台,适合喜剧的上演,同样适 : 雨中树枝的摇曳对我来说既新鲜又熟悉,它既给 合悲剧。身体健康时,空气就是让人难以置信的 补剂甜酿。越过坑坑洼洼的雪地,注目晨昏曦微 光芒,在满布乌云的天空之下,我并未想到会有 那样一次特殊的运气,实际上却得到了一个极大 的欣喜,这欣喜甚至让我接近恐惧的边缘。同样, 在森林里,一个人抛掉他所经历过的岁月,就如 同一条蛇蜕掉自己的旧皮一样,无论处在生命的 哪个时期,都像是个孩子一样。森林会给人带来 永恒的青春年少之感。在这些上帝的庄园里, 充 溢着气派和圣洁, 庆祝着四季衡续的节日, 客人 们感到居此千年也不会厌倦。在森林里, 我们回 归到理性和信仰。在那里,我感到生活中没有任 何一种自然无法修复的耻辱或是不幸(除了我眼 睛的不幸),能够降临到我的身上。站在那空旷 的土地上,我沉浸在无忧无虑而欢乐的海洋之中, 进入了一个无限空间, 所有关于自我的东西通通 一消而散。我变成了一个透明的眼球:我本身像 没有一样,却能看到所有事物,宇宙万物都通过 我穿流而过,我是上帝的一部分。此时,连最亲 近朋友的名字也显得陌生而无足轻重:同样无论 是兄弟, 熟人, 主人还是仆人, 都成了微不足道 且恼人之事。我热爱那不受遏抑的永恒的美。在 荒野中,我能找到比在街道或城镇中更珍贵而自 然的东西。在静谧的风景中,尤其是从那遥远的 地平线中,人类看到了和他本性一样美丽的东西。

荒野和森林给人们带来的巨大的愉悦暗示着 人与植物之间一种神秘的关联。我并非独处而无 人回应的,它们向我点头,我也向它们致意。风:

我带来一种惊喜,又好似并非从未有过。这种感 觉就好像当我觉得我自己已经想得或做得很好 时,一个更好的想法或是情绪出现在我脑中一样。

然而,可以肯定地说,这欢悦的力量并不存 在于自然本身, 而是存在于人, 或者说, 存在于 自然与人的和谐中。对于这些喜悦加以大力节制 是十分必要的。因为自然并非总是穿着节日的感 装,昨日还在仙女的嬉戏中散发芳香和闪烁光芒 的景象今天就被忧伤笼罩。自然总是折射着观者 的精神状态。对于一个遭受灾难的人,他内心的 火焰就蕴涵着悲伤。而一个刚刚逝去爱友的人对 风景都会感到些许漠然。同样当蓝天落幕干社会 底层者眼前,它的壮丽也会减色。

Answer

I. 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. A 8. A 9. C II. 1. T 2. T

III. 1. as 2. in 3. sadness 4. to 5. for

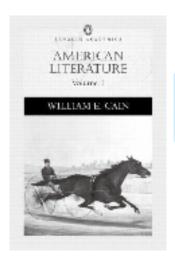


美文背景

\bigcap

爱默生

拉尔夫·沃尔多·爱默生(Ralph Waldo Emerson, 1803—1882),美国散文作家、思想家、诗人。 1803 年 5 月 6 日出生于马萨诸塞州波士顿附近的康考德村,1882 年 4 月 27 日在波士顿逝世。他的生命几乎横贯 19 世纪的美国,他出生时候的美国热闹却混沌,一些人意识到它代表着某种新力量的崛起,却无人能够清晰地表达出来。美国那时缺乏统一的政体,更没有相对一致的意识形态。在他在世的时候美国不但因为南北战争逐渐走向统一,而且它的个性也逐渐鲜明起来,除了物质力量引人注目,文化也正在竭力走出欧洲的阴影。1837 年爱默生以《美国学者》为题发表了一篇著名的演讲词,宣告美国文学已脱离英国文学而独立,告诫美国学者不要让学究习气蔓延,不要盲目地追随传统,不要进行纯粹的模仿。另外,这篇演讲词还抨击了美国社会的拜金主义,强调人的价值,因此被誉为美国思想文化领域的"独立宣言"。一年之后,爱默生在《神学院献辞》中批评了基督教唯一神教派死气沉沉的局面,竭力推崇人的至高无上,提倡靠直觉认识真理。"相信你自己的思想,相信你内心深处认为对你合适的东西对一切人都适用……"这是文学批评家劳伦斯·布尔在《爱默生传》所说的,爱默生与他的学说是美国最重要的世俗宗教。



26

Second Inaugural Address

第二次就职演说

Abraham Lincoln 亚伯拉罕·林肯

1864年当林肯再度当选连任总统职位时,美国依旧处于内战的分裂状态。当时战争的结果仍不能确定,而林肯的再度当选,成为北方人民决心作战到底、争取最后胜利的一个令人振奋的消息。本文是林肯的第二次就职演说。

March 4, 1865

Fellow-Countrymen,

At this second appearing to take the oath of the Presidential office there is less occasion for an extended address than there was at the first. Then a statement somewhat in detail of a course to be pursued seemed fitting and proper. Now, at the expiration of four years, during which public declarations have been constantly called forth on every point and phase of the great contest which still absorbs the attention and engrosses the energies of the nation, little that is new could be presented. The progress of our arms, upon which all else chiefly depends,

is as well known to the public as to myself, and it is, I trust,

reasonably satisfactory⁴ and encouraging to all. With high hope for the future, no prediction in regard to it is ventured⁵.

On the occasion corresponding to this four years ago all thoughts were anxiously directed to an impending civil war. All dreaded it, all sought to avert it. While the inaugural address was being delivered from this place, devoted altogether to saving the Union without war, insurgent⁶ agents were in the city seeking to destroy it without war—seeking to dissolve the Union and divide effects

by negotiation. Both parties deprecated⁷ war, but one of them would make war rather than let the nation survive, and the other would accept war rather than let it perish⁸, and the war came.

One-eighth of the whole population were colored slaves, not distributed generally over the Union, but localized in the southern part of it. These slaves constituted¹⁰ a peculiar¹¹ and powerful interest. All knew that this interest was somehow the cause of the war. To strengthen, perpetuate, and extend this interest was the object for which the insurgents would rend the Union even by war, while the Government claimed no right to do more than to restrict the territorial enlargement of it. Neither party expected for the war the magnitude¹² or the duration which it has already attained. Neither anticipated that the cause of the conflict¹³ might cease with or even before the conflict itself should cease. Each looked for an easier triumph¹⁴, and a result less fundamental and astounding¹⁵. Both read the same Bible and pray to the same God, and each invokes His aid against the other. It may seem strange that any men should dare to ask a just God's assistance in wringing their bread from the sweat of other men's faces, but let us judge not, that we be not judged. The prayers of both could not be answered. That of neither has been answered fully. The Almighty has His own purposes. "Woe unto the world because of offenses16; for it must needs be that offenses come, but woe to that man by whom the offense cometh." If we shall suppose that American slavery is one of those offenses which, in the providence of God, must needs come, but which, having continued through His appointed time, He now wills to remove, and that He gives to both North and South this terrible war as the woe due to those by whom the offense came, shall we discern therein any departure¹⁷ from those divine attributes which the believers in a living God always ascribe to Him? Fondly do we hope, fervently do we pray, that this mighty scourge¹⁸ of war may speedily pass away. Yet, if God wills that it continue until all the wealth piled by the bondsman's two hundred and fifty years of unrequited toil shall be sunk, and until every drop of blood drawn with the lash shall be paid by another drawn with the sword, as was said three thousand years ago, so still it must be said "the judgments of the Lord are true and righteous altogether."

With malice toward none, with charity for all, with firmness in the right as God gives us to see the right, let us strive on to finish the work we are in, to bind up the nation's wounds, to care for him who shall have borne the battle and for his widow and his orphan¹⁹, to do all which may achieve and cherish a just and lasting peace among ourselves and with all nations.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. expiration [.ekspɪˈreɪʃən] n. 满期, 呼气, <古>终止
- 2. declaration [.dekləˈreɪ[ən] n. 宣布, 宣言, 声明
- 3. engross [ɪnˈgrəus] vt. 用大字体书写, 吸引, 占用, 使全神贯注, 独占
- 4. satisfactory [ˌsætɪsˈfæktərɪ] adj. 满意的, 赎罪的
- **5.** venture ['vent[θ] n. 冒险, 投机, 风险 v. 冒险, 冒昧, 斗胆, 胆敢(谦语)
- 6. insurgent[ɪnˈsɜːdʒənt] adj. 起义的
- 7. deprecate ['deprikeɪt] vt. 抗议,不赞成,抨击,反对,藐视,轻视
- 8. perish ['perɪ[] vi. 毁灭, 死亡, 腐烂, 枯萎 vt. 毁坏, 使麻木
- 9. distribute [dɪs'trɪbjʊ(:)t] vt. 分发, 分配, 散布, 分布, 分类, 分区 v. 分发
- **10. constitute**['konstɪtju:t] vt. 制定(法律), 建立(政府), 组成, 任命
- 11. peculiar [pɪˈkjʊ:ljə] adj. 奇特的, 罕见的, 特殊的 n. 特有财产, 特权
- **12.** magnitude ['mægnɪtjʊːd] n. 大小,数量,巨大,广大,量级
- 13. conflict ['konflikt] n. 斗争,冲突 vi. 抵触,冲突
- **14. triumph** ['traɪəmf] n. 胜利,成功 v. 获得胜利
- **15. astounding** [əˈstaundɪη] adj. 令人惊骇的
- 16. offense [əˈfens] n. 进攻
- 17. departure [dɪˈpɑːt[ə] n. 启程, 出发, 离开
- **18. scourge** [sk3:d3] *n*. 鞭, 笞, 苦难的根源, 灾祸 *vt*. 鞭打, 痛斥, 蹂躏
- **19. orphan** ['o:fən] *n*. 孤儿, 失去生母的幼小动物



Expression 词句荟萃

1.take the oath 宣誓, 发誓

e.g. Are you willing to take the oath?

你愿意宣誓吗?



e.g. In regard to teaching method, we have not yet discussed it.

关于教学方法, 我们还没有讨论。

I am quite at sea in regard to his explanation.

他的解释使我犹如坠入云雾中。

3. correspond to 相当于……, 符合于……

e.g. Their designs, for the most part, correspond to actual needs and regulations on environmental demand.

他们的设计绝大部分符合实际需要和有关环境要求的条例。

It has name corresponding to the facts.

它有着与事实相符的名称。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.		
1. At this second appearing to the oath of the Presidential office there is less occasion		
for an extended address than there was at the first.		
A. have	B. take	C. make
2. With high hope for the future, no prediction in regard it is ventured.		
A. to	B. on	C. in
3. They devoted altogether to the Union without war.		
A. save	B. be saved	C. saving
4. Neither party expected for the war the magnitude or the which it has already attained.		
A. duration	B. during	C. due
5 the occasion corresponding to this four years ago all thoughts were anxiously directed		
to an impending civil war.		

A. On	B. At	C. During
6. Now, the	expiration of four	years, little that is new could be presented.
A. at	B. with	C. within
7. The judgments of	the Lord are true	and altogether.
A. right	B. rightly	C. righteous
8. Both parties depr survive.	ecated war, but o	one of them would make war than let the nation
A. other	B. more	C. rather
9. Let us strive on to	cherish a just and	peace among ourselves and with all nations.
A. lasted	B. lasting	C. last
10. That of neither _	been answ	ered fully.
A. have	B. are	C. has
2 Insurgent	of the whole population agents were in the	ulation were colored slaves. e city seeking to destroy the Union with war. nded address at his first Inaugural Address.
III. Complete th	ese sentences.	
1. With high hope	the future, r	no prediction in regard to it is ventured.
2. To (stren	gth), perpetuate,	and extend this interest was the object for which the
insurgents would r	end the Union eve	en by war.
3. Neither anticipate	d that the cause _	the conflict might cease.
4. To extend this interest even by war.	terest was the obj	ject which the insurgents would rend the Union

参考译文

1865 年 3 月 4 日 各位同胞:

在这第二次的宣誓就职典礼中,不需要像第一次就职演说时那样发表长篇演说。在那个时候,对于当时所要进行的事业作一详细的说明是合适的。现在我的前四年任期已满。在这四年里,由于这场伟大的竞赛仍然吸引着人们的注意并且占据着这个国家的精力,所以它在每个时间点和阶段都不断地引出公开宣言,因为没有什么新的情况可以报告了。我们军备的进步,因为其他各方面都依靠于这一方面,所以公众了解的和我自己了解的也一样多了;而我相信,这种情况对所有人来说都是相当令人满意和鼓舞的。我们对未来抱有很高的期望,但不能冒险做出任何相关的预测。

在四年前的这个时候,所有的思绪都焦虑地指向一场即将来临的内战。所有人都害怕它,想尽了方法去避免它。那次在这里做出的就职演说完全致力于不通过战争来拯救这个国家,然而同时本城的反叛分子却设法不用战争而破坏它——他们设法通过谈判的方法来解散联邦,分裂国家。双方都声称反对战争,可是他们中的一方宁愿打仗而不愿让国家继续存在,另一方却宁可接受这场战争,也不愿国家灭亡。于是战争就来临了。

全国人口的八分之一是黑奴,他们并非遍布整个联邦,而是集中于南方地区。这些奴隶形成成了一种特殊而重大的权益。大家都知道这种权益可以说是这场战争的起因。为了加强、保持及扩大这种权益,反叛分子会不惜以战争来分裂联

邦, 而政府只不过要限制这种权益所在地区的扩 张。当初,任何一方都没有想到这场战争会发展 到目前那么大的范围,持续那么长的时间。也没 有料到这场战争的起因会随战争本身的终止而终 止,甚至会在战争本身终止以前而终止。双方都 在寻求一个较轻易的胜利,期望结局不至于涉及 根本,令人震惊。双方念诵同一本《圣经》,祈 祷同一个上帝, 甚至每一方都求助同一上帝的援 助以帮助他们与另一方斗争。人们竟敢求助于上 帝,来帮助夺取他人以血汗得来的财富,这看来 是很奇怪的。可是我们还是不要对别人作出裁判, 免得别人来对我们进行裁判。双方的祈祷都不可 能得到回答,实际上双方的祈祷也都没有完全得 到回应。全能的上帝有他自己的目的。"由于罪恶, 世界承受苦难! 罪恶总是要来的;让那个作恶的 人受苦难!"假使我们以为美国的奴隶制度是这 种罪恶之一,而这些罪恶按上帝的意志在所难免, 但已经持续了他所指定的一段时间,他现在便要 消除这些罪恶;假使我们认为上帝把这场惨烈的 战争加在南北双方的头上,作为对那些招致罪恶 的人的责罚,上帝的信徒们认为他具有神圣的特 性,我们是不是应该看清楚对于那些特性的任何 偏离呢?我们天真地希望着,我们热忱地祈祷着, 希望这场战争的重罚可以很快地过去。可是,假 使上帝要让战争再继续下去,直到250年来奴隶 无偿劳动所积聚的财富化为乌有,并像 3000 年 前所说的那样,等到鞭笞所流的每一滴血,被刀 剑之下所流的每一滴血所抵消,那么我们仍然只 能说,"主的裁判是完全正确而且公道的"。

跟美国学生一起学英语:高级版

我们对任何人都不怀恶意,我们对任何人都怀抱仁慈,上帝让我们看到正确的事,我们就坚定地信那正确的事。让我们继续奋斗,以完成我们正在进行的工作,去抚平国家的创伤,去照顾艰苦作战的志士和他的孤儿遗孀,尽力实现并维护公正和持久的和平,包括我们自己之间的和平,以及我国与各国之间的和平。

Answer

- I. 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. A 6. A 7. C 8. C. 9. B 10. C
- II. 1. F 2. F 3. T
- III. 1. for 2. strengthen 3. of 4. for



"美"事一桩

关于演说

演说是一种表达方式,是面向听众发表意见、说明事理的一个过程。演说分为竞选演说、就职演说、练习演说等。

全球十大演说家:

世界第一名潜能激励大师——安东尼·罗宾

世界第一名心理创富学大师——高安明

世界第一名推销训练大师——汤姆·霍普金斯

世界第一名人脉关系专家——哈维·麦凯

世界第一名管理大师——博恩·崔西

世界第一名催眠师——马修:史维

世界第一名汽车销售冠军——乔·吉拉德

世界第一名行销大师——杰·亚伯拉罕

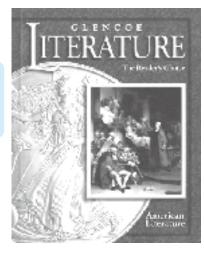
纽约房地产大亨——唐纳·特朗普

《富爸爸穷爸爸》作者——罗伯特·清崎

The Mortgaged 27 Heart

做了抵押的心

Carsom McCullers 卡森·麦卡勒斯



卡森·麦卡勒斯是20世纪美国最重要的作家之一。她的作品多描写孤独的人们,孤独、孤立和疏离的 主题始终贯穿在她的所有作品中,并铭刻在她个人生活的各个层面。本文是她的主要代表作之一。



This city, New York—consider the people in it, the eight million of us. An English friend of mine, when asked why he lived in New York City, said that he liked it here because he could be so alone. While it was my friend's desire to be alone, the aloneness of many Americans who live in cities is an involuntary¹ and fearful thing. It has been said that loneliness is the

great American malady². What is the nature of this loneliness? It would seem essentially to be a quest³ for identity.

To the spectator, the amateur philosopher, no motive among the complex ricochets⁴ of our desires and rejections seems stronger or more enduring than the will of the individual to claim his identity and belong. From infancy to death, the human being is obsessed by these dual motives. During our first weeks of life, the question of identity shares urgency with the need for milk. The baby reaches for his toes, then explores the bars of his crib; again and again he compares the difference between his own body and the objects around him, and in the wavering⁵, infant eyes there comes a pristine⁶ wonder.

Consciousness of self is the first abstract problem that the human being solves. Indeed, it is this self-consciousness that removes us from

lower animals. This primitive grasp of identity develops with constantly shifting emphasis through all our years. Perhaps maturity is simply the history of those mutations⁷ that reveal to the individual the relation between himself and the world in which he finds himself.

After the first establishment of identity there comes the imperative need to lose this newfound⁸ sense of separateness and to belong to something larger and more powerful than the weak, lonely self. The sense of moral isolation is intolerable⁹ to us.

In the *Member of the Wedding* the lonely twelve-year-old girl, Frankie Addams, articulates¹⁰ this universal need: "The trouble with me is that for a long time I have just been an I person. All people belong to a We except me. Not to belong to a We makes you too lonesome."

Love is the bridge that leads from the I sense to the We, and there is a paradox¹¹ about personal love. Love of another individual opens a new relation between the personality and the world. The lover responds a new way to nature and may even write poetry. Love is an affirmation¹²; it motivates the yes responses and the sense of wider communications. Love casts out fear, and in the security of this togetherness we find contentment, courage. We no longer fear the age-old haunting questions: "Who am I?" "Why am I?" "Where am I going?"—and having cast our fear, we can be honest and

charitable.

For fear is a primary source of evil. And when the question "Who am I?" recurs and is unanswered, then fear and frustration project a negative attitude. The bewildered soul can answer only: "Since I do not understand 'Who I am', I only know what I am not." The corollary¹³ of this emotion incertitude¹⁴ is snobbism¹⁵, intolerance and racial hate. The xenophobic¹⁶ individual can only reject and destroy, as the xenophobic nation inevitably makes war.

The loneliness of Americans does not have its source in xenophobia; as a nation we are an outgoing people, reaching always for immediate contacts, further experience. But we tend to seek out things as individuals, alone. The European, secure in his family ties and rigid¹⁷ class loyalties, knows little of the moral loneliness that is native to us Americans. While the European artists tend to form groups or aesthetic schools, the American artist is the



eternal maverick—not only from society in the York he continued his frenetic and lifelong way of all creative minds, but within the orbit search for the lost brother, the magic door. He of his own art.

Thoreau took to the woods to seek the ultimate meaning of his life. His creed¹⁸ was simplicity and his modus vivendi¹⁹ the deliberate stripping²⁰ of external life to the Spartan necessities in order that his inward life could freely flourish. His objective, as he put it, was to back the world into a corner. And in that way did he discover "What a man thinks of himself, that it is which determines, or rather indicates, his fate."

On the other hand, Thomas Wolfe turned : last we belong. to the city, and in his wanderings around New

York he continued his frenetic and lifelong search for the lost brother, the magic door. He too backed the world into a corner, and as he passed among the city's millions, returning their stares, he experienced "That silent meeting [that] is the summary of all the meetings of men's lives."

Whether in the pastoral joys of country life or in the labyrinthine city, we Americans are always seeking. We wander, question. But the answer waits in each separate heart—the answer of our own identity and the way by which we can master loneliness and feel that at last we belong



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. involuntary [ɪnˈvɒləntərɪ] adj. 自然而然的,无意的,不知不觉的,偶然的,不随意的
- 2. malady ['mælədɪ] n. 疾病
- 3. quest [kwest] n. 寻求
- **4. ricochet** ['rɪkə∫et, -∫eɪt] *n*. 跳飞, 跳弹 *v*. (使)跳飞
- **5. waver** ['weɪvə] *n*. 动摇,开始退让,踌躇,挥动者 *vi*.摇摆,颤抖,摆动,摇曳,犹豫
- **6. pristine** ['prɪstɪn] adj. 质朴的
- **7. mutation** [mju:'teɪ∫ən] *n*. 变化,转变,元音变化,(生物物种的)突变
- **8. newfound** ['nju:faund] *adj*. 新发现的,新得到的
- 9. intolerable [ɪnˈtɒlərəbl] adj. 无法忍受的, 难耐的
- **10. articulate** [aːˈtɪk]uleɪt] *adj*. 有关节的,发音清晰的 *vt*. 用关节连接,接合,清晰明白地说
- **11. paradox** ['pærədoks] *n*. 似非而是的论点,自相矛盾的话
- **12. affirmation** [əfəːˈmeɪ∫ən] *n*. 断言,主张,肯定
- 13. corollary [kəˈrɒlərɪ] n. 必然的结果, 推论

跟美国学生一起学英语: 高级版

- **14. incertitude** [ɪn'sɜːtɪtjuːd] n. 不肯定,不确定,无把握
- 15. snobbism [snobizəm] n. 势利
- **16. xenophobic** [,zenəu`fəubɪk,,zi:-] adj. 恐惧(或憎恨)外国人的, 恐外的
- 17. rigid ['rɪdʒɪd] adj. 刚硬的, 刚性的, 严格的
- **18. creed** [kriːd] n. 信条
- 19. modus vivendi [məʊdəs vɪ'vendɪ] n. 生活方式, 暂时妥协
- **20. strip** [strip] *vt*. 剥,剥去 *n*. 条,带



Expression 词句荟萃

1. reach for 伸手去拿

e.g. Jane reached for her Chinese book.

简伸手去拿她的中文书。

I reach for some snacks.

我伸手抓点心吃。

- 2. remove...from 从……转移到
 - e.g. His family removes from the city to the countryside.

他家从城里搬到了乡下。

Alice removed unwanted records from a file.

爱丽丝把文件中不要的记录去掉了。

- 3. cast out 逐出, 赶出
 - e.g. Albert was cast out from his family.

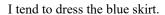
艾伯特从家中被赶了出来。

He was cast out from the club.

他被俱乐部开除了。

- **4. tend to** 有……的倾向, 往往
 - e.g. He tends to buy a red car.

他倾向于买一辆红色的车。



我往往穿蓝色的裙子。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.			
1. While it was my fri	end's desire	be alone, the aloneness of many Americans who live in	
cities is an involuntary and fearful thing.			
A. at	B. to	C. for	
2. It would seem essentially to be a quest identity.			
A. for	B. in	C. to	
3. From infancy to death, the human being is obsessed these dual motives.			
A. of	B. with	C. by	
4. The baby reaches _	his toes, ther	explores the bars of his crib.	
A. with	B. in	C. for	
5. This primitive grasp of identity develops with constantly shifting emphasis all our			
years.			
A. within	B. in	C. through	
6. But the answer waits in each separate heart—the answer of our own identity and the way			
which we can master loneliness and feel that at last we belong.			
A. in	B. by	C. of	
7. While the European artists tend form from society in the way of all creative minds, but			
within the orbit of h	is own art.		
A. with	B. to	C. at	
8. Indeed, it is this self-consciousness that removes us lower animals.			
A. at	B. to	C. from	

9. Thoreau took	_ the woods to se	ek the ultima	te meaning of his life.	
A. for	B. to	C. in		
10. Whether in the	pastoral joys of co	ountry life	in the labyrinthine city, we Americans are	
always seeking.				
A. or	B. from	C. for	1	
II. Write true (Γ) or false (F).			
1 Conscio	usness of self is	the first abs	tract problem that the human being solves.	
Indeed, it is this s	elf-consciousness	that removes	us from lower animals.	
2 Thomas	Wolfe turned to	the city, an	d in his wanderings around New York he	
continued his fren	netic and lifelong s	search for the	lost brother, the magic door.	
3 The lone	liness of America	ns does not h	ave its source in xenophobia; as a nation we	
are an outgoing p	eople.			
4 Thoreau to	ook to the city to s	eek the ultima	ate meaning of his life.	
5 Love cas	ts out fear, and in	n the security	of this togetherness we find contentment,	
courage.				
III. Complete the	hese sentences	•		
1. The sense of mor	al isolation is	(tolera	te) to us.	
2. While the Europe	ean artists tend to	form from so	ciety in the way of all (create) minds,	
but within the orbit of his own art.				
3. Perhaps (mature) simply the history of those mutations that reveal to the individual				
the relation between himself and the world in which he finds himself.				
4. After the first establishment of identity there comes the imperative need to lose this newfound				
sense of	_ (separate) and t	to belong to s	omething larger and more powerful than the	
weak, lonely self.				
5. What is the natu	re of this	(lonely) ?	It would seem essentially to be a quest for	
identity.				

参考译文

这个城市——纽约,有800万人住在里面。: "我的问题是很长时间以来我只是一个'我'。除 有人问我的一个英国朋友为什么住在纽约,他说 他喜欢这里,是因为在这里他能独处。我朋友的 愿望是希望独处,然而很多住在城市里的美国人 的独处是一件无意识的、可怕的事情。有人说孤 独是美国最大的弊病。这种孤独的本质是什么? 这似乎是一种对自我的寻求。

在作为旁观者的业余哲学家看来,一个人 愿望的反复是不存在什么动机的, 而最强烈、最 期待的动机似乎就是个体宣称其身份和归属的愿 望。从婴儿期到死亡,人类一直被这双重动机困 扰着。对自身身份的寻求就好像在生命的最初几 周里对乳汁的需要一样急迫。婴儿摸摸自己的脚 趾,然后摸索他的小床的栏杆;他一次次地比较 着自己的身体和周围物体之间的不同,在他那犹 豫的眼中出现了一种纯洁的惊愕。

自我意识是人类解决的第一个抽象问题。 实际上,正是这种自我意识将我们和低等动物 区分开。人对于自身的最初认识在一生中不断 地变化着。成熟的过程很可能就是一些变化的 过程,这些变化使每个人看到了自己和身处的 世界间的关系。

最初的自我意识建立起来之后, 随之而来的 就是一种势在必行的需要,它迫使人们放弃这种 新建立的孤立意识,而归属于某种比这弱小的自 我更强大有力的集体。精神上的隔离感是我们无 法忍受的。

了我以外, 所有的人都属于一个'我们'。不属 于一个'我们'让人感觉太寂寞了。"

爱是从"我"的感觉通往"我们"的桥梁, 而个人的爱情中存在着一个矛盾。对另一个人的 爱开辟了一种个人和世界之间的新关系。拥有爱 情的人对自然有了一种新的反应, 甚至可以写诗。 爱情就是肯定,它激发了"是"的反应和更宽广 交流的感觉。爱情驱逐了恐惧,我们在这种共处 的安全感中找到了满足和勇气。我们不再害怕那 些久久徘徊在我们心中的问题:"我是谁?""我 为什么存在?""我将要去哪里?"——而驱逐了 恐惧之后,我们可以变得诚实和博爱。

这种恐惧是罪恶的基本来源。当"我是谁?" 这个问题不断出现但得不到回答时, 恐惧和挫 折感就投射出了一种负面的态度。那茫然而不 知所措的灵魂只能回答道:"我不明白'我是谁', 我只知道我不是什么。"这种情感不确定的必然 结果就是势利、不宽容和种族间的仇恨。个别 害怕陌生人或外国人的人只会拒绝和破坏,正 如害怕陌生人或外国人的国家不可避免地进行 战争一样。

但是美国人的孤独感并非来源于他们对陌生 人或外国人的害怕,作为一个民族,我们是一个 喜欢与外界交流的民族,我们总是积极发展与外 界的直接联系和更广泛的交流。但是我们倾向于 把所有物体看成独立的个体。欧洲人在他的家庭 在《婚礼的成员》中,那个12岁的孤独女:关系和坚固的阶级忠诚感中感到很安全,他们不 孩弗兰淇‧亚当斯清楚地说出了这个普遍的需要:::了解我们美国人与生俱来的那种孤独感。欧洲艺

跟美国学生一起学英语:高级版

术家喜欢组成小组或美学学派,而美国艺术家却 : 托马斯·沃尔夫从另一个方面入手,走向了 永远是持不同意见的人——他们不仅像所有的创 造性思维那样与整个社会持不同意见,而且在他 自己的艺术轨道中也是如此。

梭罗为了寻求他生命的基本含义而隐居到森 林里。他的信条是简单,他的"生活方式"是人 为地削减外部生活,直到达到斯巴达式的基本生 活需要,这些都是为了它的内在生命能够自由地 繁荣发展。正如他所说的,他的目标就是把整个 世界建成一个角落。用那种方法,他确实发现了 "一个人只要坚持自己的看法,就决定或者指明 了自己的命运"。

:城市,他在纽约各处漫步的过程中,竭尽一生, 不断地狂热搜寻着他那丢失的兄弟和那扇有魔力 的门。同样地,他也把世界缩减到了一个角落里, : 他从城市中上百万人身边经过,与他们互相对视 时,他经历了"那种沉默的会面就是人类生命所 有会面的总结"。

无论是生活在乡村的田园快乐中, 还是在那 迷宫般的城市里,我们美国人都一直在寻找。我 :们游逛,询问。然而那答案却藏在每颗独立的心 :中——那答案告诉我们自己的身份,并让我们控 : 制孤独感, 最终感到有所归属。

美文背景

自我意识

自我意识是一个人对自己的认识和评价,包括对自己心理倾向、个性心理特征和心理过程的认识 与评价。正是由于人具有自我意识,才能对自己的思想和行为进行自我控制、自我调节,使自己形成 完整的个性。

自我意识是人对自己身心状态及自己同客观世界的关系的意识。自我意识包括三个层次,对自己 及其状态的认识;对自己肢体活动状态的认识;对自己思维、情感、意志等心理活动的认识。自我意 识是人脑对主体自身的意识与反映,人的发展离不开周围环境,特别是人与人之间关系的制约和影响, 所以自我意识也反映人与周围现实之间的关系。自我意识是人类特有的反映形式,是人的心理区别于 动物心理的一大特征。

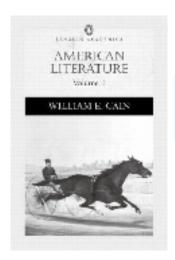
自我意识在个体发展中起着十分重要的作用。首先,自我意识是认识外界客观事物的条件。一个 人如果还不知道自己,也无法把自己与周围相区别时,他就不可能认识外界客观事物。其次,自我意 识是人的自觉性、自控力的前提,对自我教育有推动作用。人只有意识到自己是谁,应该做什么的时候,才会自觉自律地去行动。一个人意识到自己的长处和不足,有助于他发扬优点,克服缺点,取得自我教育积极的效果。最后,自我意识是改造自身主观因素的途径,它使人能不断地自我监督、自我修养、自我完善。可见,自我意识影响着人的道德判断和个性的形成,尤其对个性倾向性的形成更为重要。



Answer

- I. 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. C 6. B 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. A
- II. 1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
- III. 1. intolerable 2. creative 3. maturity
 - 4. separateness 5. loneliness





28

Crossing the Great Divide

穿越大裂谷

Meriwether Lewis 麦里韦泽·李维斯

麦里韦泽·李维斯和威廉姆·克拉克带领着一队全心追随他们的退役士兵完成了一次为期两年、全长8000英里的探险考察,他们穿越了美国在购买路易斯安那时获得的未经勘探的领土。本文记述了这一探险过程。

Saturday, August 17th, 1805

This morning I arose very early and dispatched Drewyer and the Indian down the river. Sent Shields to hunt, I made McNeal cook the reminder of our meat which afforded a slight breakfast for ourselves and the Chief. Drewyer had been gone about 2 hours when an Indian who had straggled¹ some little distance down the river returned and reported that the white men were coming, that he had seen them just below. They all appeared transported with joy, and the chief repeated his fraternal² hug. I felt quite as much gratified³ at this information as the Indians appeared to be. Shortly after Capt. Clark arrived with the Interpreter Charbono, and the Indian woman, who proved to be a sister of the Chief Cameahwait. The meeting of those was really affecting, particularly⁴ between Sah-cah-gar-we-ah and an Indian woman, who had been taken prisoner at the same time with her, and who had afterwards escaped from the Minnetares and rejoined her

nation. At noon the canoes⁵ arrived, and we had the satisfaction once more to find ourselves all together, with a flattering⁶ prospect of being able to obtain as many horses shortly as would enable us to prosecute⁷ our voyage by land and should that by water be deemed⁸ unadvisable⁹.

We now formed our camp just below the junction of the forks on the larboard side in a level smooth bottom covered with a fine turf



of greensward¹⁰. Here we unloaded our canoes and arranged our baggage on shore; formed a canopy¹¹ of one of our large sails and planted some willow brush in the ground to form a shade for the Indians to sit under while we spoke to them, which we thought it best to do this evening. Accordingly about 4 P.M. we called them together and through the medium¹² of Labuish, Charbono and Sah-cahgar-we-ah, we communicated to them fully the objects which had brought us into this distant part of the country, in which we took care to make them a conspicuous¹³ object of our own good wishes and the care of our government. We made them sensible of their dependence on the will of our government for every species of merchandise¹⁴ as



well for their defense and comfort, and apprised¹⁵ them of the strength of our government and its friendly dispositions¹⁶ towards them. We also gave them as a reason why we wished to penetrate¹⁷ the country as far as the ocean to the west of them was to examine and find out a more direct way to bring merchandise to them. That as no trade could be carried on with them before our return to our homes that it was mutually advantageous¹⁸ to them as well as to ourselves, that they should render¹⁹ us such aids as they had it in their power to furnish²⁰ in order to hasten²¹ our voyage and of course our return home.

吴 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. straggle ['strægl] v. 迷路,落伍,蔓生,四散 n. 散乱
- 2. fraternal [frəˈtɜːnl] adj. 兄弟的,兄弟般的,友爱的
- 3. gratify ['grætɪfaɪ] vt. 使满足
- **4. particularly** [pəˈtɪkjʊləlɪ] *adv*. 独特地,显著地
- **5. canoe** [kəˈnʊː] *n*. 独木舟,轻舟

跟美国学生一起学英语:高级版

- 6. flattering [ˈflætərɪŋ] adj. 谄媚的, 讨人欢喜的, 奉承的, (照片等)比真人更美丽的
- 7. prosecute ['prosikju:t] vt. 实行, 从事, 告发, 起诉 vi. 告发, 起诉, 做检察官
- 8. deem [diːm] v. 认为,相信
- 9. unadvisable ['ʌnəd'vaɪzəbl] adj. 不得当的
- 10. greensward ['gri:nswo:d] n. 草皮
- 11. canopy [ˈkænəpɪ] n. 天篷, 遮篷
- **12. medium** ['mi:djəm] n. 媒体,方法,媒介 adj. 中间的,中等的,半生熟的
- 13. conspicuous [kənˈspɪkjʊəs] adj. 显著的
- 14. merchandise ['məːt[əndaɪz] n. 商品, 货物
- 15. apprise [əˈpraɪz] vt. 通知
- 16. disposition [dɪspəˈzɪ[ən] n. 部署
- **17. penetrate**['penɪtreɪt] vt. 穿透, 渗透, 看穿, 洞察 vi. 刺入, 看穿, 渗透, 弥漫
- 18. advantageous [ˌædvənˈteɪdʒəs] adj. 有利的
- **19. render** ['rendə] *vt.* 呈递,归还,着色,汇报,致使,放弃,表演,实施 *vi.* 给予补偿 *n.* 缴 纳,粉刷,打底
- **20. furnish** ['fə:nɪ[] vt.供应,提供,装备,布置 v. 供给
- 21. hasten ['heɪsn] v.催促, 赶紧, 促进, 加速



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. at the same time 与此同时, 然而
 - e.g. He is good at painting; at the same time, he likes swimming very much.

他擅长绘画;与此同时,他还十分喜欢游泳。

I feel bound to condemn his action, at the same time I do not think we should be too severe on him.

我觉得要谴责他的行为,不过我认为不应该对他过分严厉。



e.g. Please take care to protect this book.

请精心保护好这本书。

Tina took care to finish her dissertation.

蒂娜十分认真地完成她的毕业论文。

3. find out 找出,发明,查明

e.g. He finally found out that what people had believed for hundreds of years is wrong.

他最终发现人们几百年来一直所相信的是错误的。

He found out the reasons at last.

他终于找出了其中的原因。

4. carry on 继续, 从事, 争吵

e.g. Vivian carried on learning her lessons after a short break.

薇薇安在短暂休息之后继续她的课程。

From the beginning of this month, Robert carried on helping his teacher comprise the book.

自这个月初开始, 罗伯特一直在帮他的老师编书。

5. as well as 同时, 也, 而且

e.g. She is smart, as well as hard-working.

她不但聪明,而且努力。

China's great civilization attracts attention from the whole world, as well as its long history.

中国的伟大文明以及它的悠久历史引起全世界的瞩目。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct letter in the blank.

1. I felt quite as much gratified at this information the Indians appeared to be.

A. as

B. for

C. in

2. We made them sensible their dependence on the will of our government for every	y
species of merchandise as well for their defense and comfort, and apprised them of the	Э
strength of our government and its friendly dispositions towards them.	
A. for B. of C. at	
3. We also gave them as a reason we wished to penetrate the country as far as the ocean	1
to the west of them was to examine and find out a more direct way to bring merchandise to)
them.	
A. what B. that C. why	
4. That as no trade could be carried with them before our return to our homes that it wa	s
mutually advantageous to them as well as to ourselves, that they should render us such aid	
as they had it in their power to furnish in order to hasten our voyage and of course our return	
home.	
A. on B. with C. to	
5. At noon the canoes arrived, and we had the satisfaction once more to find ourselves al	1
together, with a flattering prospect of being able to obtain as many horses shortly as would	
enable us our voyage by land and should that by water be deemed unadvisable.	
A. to prosecute B. prosecute C. prosecuting	
6. I felt quite as much gratified this information as the Indians appeared to be.	
A. in B. at C. on	
7. We now formed our camp just below the junction of the forks on the larboard side in a leve	.1
smooth bottom covered a fine turf of greensward.	1
•	
8. Accordingly about 4 p.m. we called them together and through the medium of Labuish	
Charbono and Sah-cah-gar-we-ah, we communicated to them fully the objects which had	
brought us into this distant part of the country, in which we took care them a conspicuou	S
object of our own good wishes and the care of our government.	
A. to make B. making C. with making	
9. Here we unloaded our canoes and arranged our baggage on shore; formed a canopy of one o	
our large sails and planted some willow brush in the ground to form a shade for the Indians to)
sit under while we spoke them, which we thought it best to do this evening.	
A. with B. to C. at	

10. The meeting of those was really affecting, particularly between Sah-cah-ga-we-ah and
an Indian woman, who had been taken prisoner at the same time with her, and who had
afterwards escaped the Minnetares and rejoined her nation.
A. / B. to C. from
II. Write true (T) or false (F).
1 This essay was written on August 17th, 1805, Sunday.
2 I made McNeal cook the reminder of our meat which afforded a slight breakfast for
ourselves and the Chief Drewyer had been gone about 2 hours when an Indian who had
straggled some little distance down the river returned and reported that the white men were
coming, that he had seen them just below.
3 In the evening the canoes arrived, and we had the satisfaction once more to find
ourselves all together, with a flattering prospect of being able to obtain as many horses shortly
as would enable us to prosecute our voyage by land and should that by water be deemed
unadvisable.
4 Shortly after Capt. Clark arrived with the Interpreter Charbono, and the Indian woman,
who proved to be a sister of the Chief Cameahwait.
5 We also gave them as a reason why we wished to penetrate the country as far as the
ocean to the east of them was to examine and find out a more direct way to bring merchandise
to them.
III. Complete these sentences.
1. They all appeared transported with joy, and the chief repeated his hug.
2. At noon the canoes arrived, and we had the satisfaction once to find ourselves all
together.
3. The meeting of those was really (affect), particularly between Sah-cah-ga-we-ah
and an Indian woman, who had been taken prisoner at the same time with her, and who had
afterwards escaped from the Minnetares and rejoined her nation.
4. Here we (load) our canoes and arranged our baggage on shore.
5. We made them sensible of their dependence on the will of our government for every species
of merchandise as for their defense and comfort, and apprised them of the strength of
our government and its friendly dispositions towards them.

参考译文

1805年8月17日星期六

今天早晨我很早就起了床,派德鲁叶和那个 印第安人顺河而下, 让希尔兹去打猎, 让麦克尼 尔把我们剩下的肉煮熟, 为我们和酋长做了点便 饭。在德鲁叶出发了两个小时左右,一个印第安 人沿着河独自闲逛了一段距离之后回来了, 并且 报告说白人们要回来了,因为他就在下面看到了 他们。他们所有的人都表现出激动和狂喜, 酋长 不停地拥抱着。听到这个消息,我和那些印第安 人感到同样高兴。过了不久, 克拉克船长就和卡 波诺,随同一个印第安女人一起来了。之后我们 得知那个女人是卡米沃酋长的姐姐。那些人相见 的场面真的很感人,尤其是萨卡噶为阿和一个印 第安妇女的见面更是令人感动。那个印第安妇女 曾经和她同时被囚禁,后来从米内塔勒斯逃走并 回到了她的族人中间。中午时分, 独木舟到了, 我们又感到十分满足,因为我们聚齐了。 舟上的 人还告诉我们,我们很快就会得到很多马来代步, 这样就不怕水路不可行了。

接着,我们在河左岸分岔路的交叉点下方发现了一块很好的平坦的草地,于是便在此支起了帐篷。我们在这里卸下了独木舟里的东西,并把行李都安放在岸上。我们用一张大帆支起了一个天篷,并在地上插了一些柳树枝,以便让印第安人在和我们谈话的时候能够坐在柳树枝的树荫下。我们认为,最好当天傍晚就和印第安人谈话。所以,到了下午四点左右,我们便把他们叫到了一起,通过拉布士、卡波诺和萨卡噶为阿的翻译,我们向他们充分地阐述了我们来到这个国家的边

远地区的目的。其间我们着重强调了我们的祝福 以及政府的关心。通过交流,他们明确认识到, 无论是他们的每种货物,还是他们的安全防卫和 舒适生活都要依靠我们的政府。我们还将我们政 府的强大及其对他们的关心加以告知,同时告诉 他们,我们之所以要深入到他们再往西的海岸, 就是要勘察并发现一条能更直接地把商品带给他 们的通路。在返回之前我们不能够与他们进行互 惠交易,因此他们需要在力所能及的范围内帮助 我们加快我们的旅行和返航进程。

Answer

I. 1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. B 10. C

II. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F

III. 1. fraternal 2. more 3. affecting 4. unloaded 5. well



美文背景

\bigcirc

裂谷的产生

大陆裂谷有主动式裂谷和被动式裂谷两大类。

主动式裂谷,是因为地下热点的岩浆上涌,岩浆上涌到岩石圈后被阻挡,然后它就像上升气流到 达对流层顶部不能再上升一样,只好向四周水平流动,气流水平流动导致形状像打铁的砧子一样的积 雨云的出现,而由于岩浆十分黏稠,岩浆的水平流动对上面的岩石有较大的摩擦拖拽作用,导致岩石 圈出现分裂趋势。如果有两个或两个以上的热点比较靠近,岩石圈就很可能在这种拖拽作用下沿着热 点的连线裂开,成为大陆裂谷。因此主动式大陆裂谷的成因与大洋中脊的成因是相同的。事实上,主 动式大陆裂谷如果持续发展,最终都将发展成大洋。除了东非大裂谷以外,著名的主动式大陆裂谷还 有红海向北延伸的约旦河谷,其中最低处就是死海。另外还有美国西部的死谷。现在也有人认为贝加 尔湖裂谷是主动式大陆裂谷。

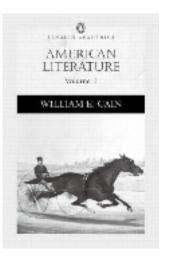
其实主动式大陆裂谷又分为两类,一种是原生性主动式大陆裂谷,也就是像东非大裂谷和死谷这样的,由地下长期活动的原生性热点造成。所谓原生性热点,是由于地幔中下部放射性物质衰变释放的大量热能,熔化了软流圈,并在软流圈局部导致岩浆对流上涌。另外还有一种次生性热点,这种热点不是地幔深处物质被加热上升形成的,而是某海洋板块俯冲到另一板块下之后,板块前缘冲进软流圈,被高温熔化,并且由于构成板块的地壳物质密度小,因此熔融后会迅速上升形成次生性热点。由次生性热点形成的大陆裂谷,由于板块熔化后形成的岩浆上升很快,因此这种裂谷大多发展很快,迅速地度过了大陆裂谷期,进一步演化成弧后盆地。一些弧后盆地已经具备了大洋地壳,成为大洋的雏形。中国东北的松嫩平原一辽河平原一渤海一华北平原,可以认为是一个超大型的次生性主动大陆裂谷,而东海则是已经扩展成海洋的大陆次生性主动大陆裂谷,南海、日本海的海底已经具备了大洋地壳,是发展到极致的次生性主动大陆裂谷。由于俯冲时板块熔融并不一定在一条线上发生,因此次生性主动大陆裂谷常常不是形成一条长而窄的线形谷地,而是有相当大的宽度,所以这种裂谷常常不表现为谷地的形状。主动式裂谷的主要特征是有强烈的岩浆活动,常常有火山喷发。

被动式大陆裂谷产生的原因与地下的岩浆活动无关,而是受到来自水平方向的作用力。具体地说,

当板块之间有水平作用力时,有的地方会发生挤压,有的地方会发生侧向的扭转走滑,而有的地方则发生拉伸张裂。在有张裂的地方,就会形成被动式大陆裂谷。最典型的例子就是中国的汾渭谷地和银川—河套平原。

青藏高原受印度板块挤压,向东北方向运动,遇到鄂尔多斯地块的阻挡,于是向两侧鄂尔多斯地块挤出,也就是鄂尔多斯地块东南面的秦岭—太行山—带向东运动,西北面的贺兰山—阴山—带向北运动,导致在鄂尔多斯地块与这些山体之间被拉伸张裂,形成被动式大陆裂谷。陕西南部的汉中盆地,一般也认为是被动式大陆裂谷。前面提到的贝加尔湖,有些科学家认为是主动式大陆裂谷,也有人认为是被动式大陆裂谷。被动式大陆裂谷一般没有或少有岩浆和火山作用,也很难进一步发展成为大的海洋。

The Earth on **Turtle's Back**



龟背上的土地

Onondaga 昂昂达嘎

神话产生于人类解释生命开端的需要,是人们代代相传的传统故事,大多数是关于神灵精怪的。我们 把这些重述早期生命起源的故事称为起源神话。本文为美国土著人的起源神话。

Before this Earth existed, there was only water. It stretched as far as one could see, and in that water there were birds and animals swimming around. Far above, in the clouds, there was a Skyland. In that Skyland there was a great and beautiful tree. It had four white roots which stretched to each of the sacred² directions, and from its branches all kinds of fruits and flowers grew.

There was an ancient chief in the Skyland. His young wife was expecting³ a child, and one night she dreamed that she saw the Great Tree uprooted⁴. The next day she told her husband the story.

He nodded as she finished telling her dream. "My wife," he

a dream of great power and, as is our way, when one has such a powerful dream we must do all we can do to make it true. The Great

Tree must be



uprooted."

Then the Ancient Chief called the young men together and told them that they must pull up the tree. But the roots of the tree were so deep, so strong, that they could not budge⁵ it. At last the Ancient Chief himself came to the tree. He wrapped⁶ his arms around it, bent his knees and strained⁷. At last, with one great effort, he uprooted the tree and placed it on its side. Where the tree's roots had gone deep into the Skyland was now a big hole. The wife of the chief came close and leaned over to look down, grasping⁸ the tip of one of the Great Tree's branches to steady her. It seemed as if she saw something down there, far below, glittering⁹ like water. She leaned out further to look and, as she leaned, she lost her balance and fell into the hole. Her grasp slipped off the tip of the branch, leaving her with only a handful of seeds as she fell, down, down, down, down, down.

Far below, in the waters, some of the birds and animals looked up.

"Someone is falling toward us from the sky," said one of the birds.

"We must do something to help her," said another. Then two Swans flew up. They caught the woman from the sky between their wide wings. Slowly, they began to bring her down toward the water, where the birds and animals were watching.

"She is not like us," said one of the animals. "Look, she doesn't have webbed feet. I don't think she can live in the water."

"What shall we do them?" said another of the water animals.

"I know," said one of the water birds. "I have heard that there is Earth far below the waters. If we dive¹⁰ down and bring up Earth, then she will have a place to stand."

So the birds and animals decided that someone would have to bring up Earth. One by one they tried.

The Duck dove first, some say. He swam down and down, far beneath¹¹ the surface, but could not reach the bottom¹² and floated back up. Then the Beaver tried. He went even deeper, so deep that all was dark, but he could not reach the bottom either. The Loon tried, swimming with his strong wings. Hewas gone a long, long time, but he, too, failed to bring up Earth. Soon it seemed that all had tried and all had failed. Then a small voice spoke.

"I will bring up Earth or die trying."

They looked to see who it was. It was Tiny Muskrat. She dove down and swam and swam. She was not as strong or as swift as the others, but she determined. She went so deep that it was all dark, but still she swam deeper. She swam so deep that her lungs¹³ felt ready to burst, but she swam

deeper still. At last, just as she was becoming unconscious¹⁴, she reached out one small paw¹⁵ and grasped at the bottom, barely touching it before she floated¹⁶ up, almost dead.

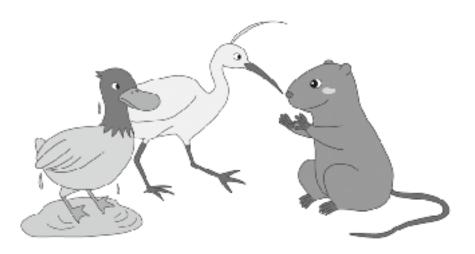
When the other animals saw her break the surface they thought she had failed. Then they saw her right paw was held tightly shut¹⁷.

"She has the Earth," they said. "Now where can we put it?"

"Place it on my back," said a deep voice. It was the Great Turtle, who had come up from the depths.

They brought the Muskrat over to the Great Turtle and placed her paw against his back. To this day there are marks at the back of the Turtle's shell which were made by the Muskrat's paw. The tiny bit of Earth fell on the back of the Turtle. Almost immediately, it began to grow larger and larger and larger until it became the whole world.

Then the two Swans brought the Sky Woman down. She stepped onto the new Earth and opened her hand, letting the seeds fall onto the bare soil. From those seeds the grass sprang up. Life on Earth had begun.





Wocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. stretch [stret∫] v. 伸展, 伸长
- 2. sacred ['seɪkrɪd] adj. 神的, 宗教的, 庄严的, 神圣的
- 3. expect [ɪks'pekt] vt. 期待, 预期, 盼望, 指望, <口>(料)想, 认为
- 4. uproot [ʌpˈruːt] vt. 连根拔起, 根除
- **5. budge** [bʌdʒ] v. 移动
- **6. wrap** [ræp] vt. 包装, 卷, 缠绕, 包, 覆盖, 裹, 遮蔽, 隐藏
- 7. strain [streɪn] vt. 扭伤, 损伤 v. 拉紧, 扯紧, (使)紧张, 尽力
- **8.** grasp [gra:sp] vt. 抓住, 抓紧, 掌握, 领会
- 9. glitter [ˈglɪtə] vi. 闪闪发光,闪烁,闪光
- 10. dive [daɪv] vi. 潜水, 跳水, 下潜, 俯冲
- **11. beneath** [bɪˈniːθ] *adv.* 在······之下 *prep.* 在······之下
- **12. bottom** ['botəm] *n*. 底, 底部, 尽头, 末端
- 13. float[flout] vi. 浮动, 飘浮, 散播, 摇摆, 漂浮, 动摇, (计划等)付诸实行
- **14. lung** [lʌŋ] n. 肺, 呼吸器, 肺脏
- **15. unconscious** [ʌnˈkɒnʃəs] *adj.* 不省人事的,未发觉的,无意识的
- **16. paw** [po:] *n*. 手掌, 手爪
- **17. shut** [ʃʌt] v. 关上,闭上,关闭



Expression 词句荟萃

1. fail to do 做某事失败

e.g. He failed to pass the exam.

他没有通过考试。

If we fail to do so, and allow the disease to overwhelm the nation, the consequences will be catastrophic $_{\circ}$

如果我们做不到这一点而让这种疾病肆虐全国的话,其结果是灾难性的。



2. reach out 伸出, 触及

eg. Everybody tried to reach out to those affected by the recent earthquake.

人人都努力向最近受到地震灾害的人们伸出援助之手。

They rebuilt the cinemas in an effort to reach out to the young people.

他们重建了电影院,试图吸引青年人。

3. spring up 涌出, 涌现出

eg. After World War II, new nations sprang up like bamboo shoots after spring rain.

第二次世界大战以后,新国家如同雨后春笋似地涌现出来。

In recent years, many new factories have sprung up in my home town.

最近几年,我的家乡涌现出很多新工厂。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Write the correct	ct letter in the blank.	
1. It stretched as far as	s one could see, and in that	t water there were birds and animals
around.		
A. swimming	B. swim	C. swam
2. It had four white re	oots which stretched	each of the sacred directions, and from its
branches all kinds of	f fruits and flowers grew.	
A. to	B. with	C. /
3. His young wife was	a child, and one n	right she dreamed that she saw the Great Tree
uprooted.		
A. having	B. expecting	C. wanting
4. The next day she	her husband the story.	
A. said	B. told	C. spoke
5. He nodded as she fir	nished her dream.	
A. telling	B. to tell	C. in telling

6. It is clearly a drean	n of great power a	and, as is our way, when one has such a powerful dream
we must do all we can do to it true.		
A. make	B. come	C. change
7. Then the Ancient 0	Chief called the y	young men together and told them that they must pull
the tree.		
A. down	B. into	C. up
8. He was gone a long	g, long time, but h	e, too, failed to bring Earth.
A. down	B. into	C. up
9. It was the Great Tu	rtle, who had com	ne from the depths.
A. up	B. in	C. on
10 last, just as	she was becomi	ing unconscious, she reached out one small paw and
grasped at the bott	tom, barely touchi	ing it before she floated up, almost dead.
A. At	B. In	C. On
II. Write true (T)	or false (F).	
1 It was Tin	y Muskrat that fin	nally bring up Earth from the bottom of the sea.
2 Some say	that the Duck dov	ve first but failed.
3 The Great	Turtle was with o	other animals there all the time.
4 The anim	nals brought the	Muskrat over to the Great Turtle and placed her paw
against his back.		
5 The Ancient Chief called the young men together and told them that they must pull		
up the tree.		
III. Complete the	se sentences.	
1. The woman doesn't have feet, so that it is necessary to get a place for her to stand.		
2. It stretched as far as one could see, and that water there were birds and animals		
swimming around.		
3. The wife of the chief came close and leaned over to look, grasping the tip of one of		
the Great Tree's branches to steady her.		
4. She swam so deep her lungs felt ready to burst, but she swam deeper still.		
5. Far below, in the waters, some of the birds and animals looked		
	\sim	

参考译文

到多远,那水就伸展到多远,鸟儿和动物都在水 : 鸟说。 里游来游去。在水的上方很远的地方,有一片"天 陆"。在那片"天陆"上,长着一颗巨大美丽的树。 而它的枝条上长着各种果实和花朵。

在那片"天陆"上住着一个老首领。他年轻 的妻子怀了孕。一天夜里,她梦见那棵大树被连 根拔起。第二天,她把这个梦讲给了她的丈夫。

在她讲完了她的梦以后,他点点头,说:"我 的妻子,你做的这个梦让我感到很悲伤。这很显 然是个具有巨大力量的梦。按照我们的传统,当 有人做了这样一个有力的梦时,我们就要尽力让: 它实现。大树必须被连根拔起。"

然后老首领就把所有的年轻人叫到一起,告 诉他们必须把那棵树拔起来。可是那棵树的根扎 得那么深,他们根本就推不动它。最后老首领自 己走到树前。他双臂抱着树干,弯下膝盖,身体 紧绷着。终于,他猛地用了一下力,把那棵树连 根拔了起来,平放在了地上。这棵树原本深深扎 根的那块"天陆"现在就变成了一个大洞。首领 的妻子走近前来,抓住大树的一根树枝稳住身子。 探身向下看,她好像在下面很远的地方看见有什么 么东西像水一样熠熠生辉,于是又向前探了探身 子, 想看清楚。就在她向前探身的时候, 她失去 了平衡,掉进了那个洞里。她的手从那树枝上滑。 下来的时候抓了一把种子,然后她就一直向下掉, 向下,向下,向下……

在土地存在之前,世上只有水。一个人能看 : "有人从天上朝我们这儿掉下来了。"有一只

"我们应该帮帮她。"另一只鸟说。然后就有 : 两只天鹅向上飞去, 它们把那从天上掉下来的女 它有四条白色的根,每条伸向一个神圣的方向, : 人架在宽阔的翅膀之间。慢慢地, 它们带着她向 水面飞来,而鸟儿和动物们都在水中看着。

> "她不像我们,"一只动物说,"看,她的脚 上没有蹼。我想她不能生活在水里。"

"那我们应该怎么办呢?"另一只水里的动物 : 问道。

"我知道。"有只水鸟说,"我听说在水下很 远的地方有泥土,如果我们潜水下去,把泥土拿 上来的话,她就可以有个地方站了。"

于是鸟儿和动物们就决定要由谁去把泥土拿 上来,它们一个接一个地尝试。

有的说,是鸭子第一个潜了下去。它向下游 啊游,到了水下面很远的地方,但是没碰到底就 又浮了上来。然后轮到海狸,它潜得更深,深得 周围一片黑暗,但是它也碰不到底。潜鸟开始尝 试。它用它那强壮的翅膀努力地游着,可是过了 很长很长时间,它仍然没能把泥土拿上来。不久, 好像所有的动物都尝试过了,但都失败了。然后 有一个小小的声音说话了:"我要是不把泥土拿 上来,就死在水下。"

它们都想看看那是谁,原来是小麝鼠。它潜 入水下,游啊游。它不像其他动物那样强壮,也 不像它们那样敏捷,可是它有坚定的决心。它潜 到周围一片黑暗的深处,仍然向更深处游去。它 在远远的下方,有些鸟和动物在水中向上望去。: 游得那么深,它的肺都要爆炸了,可它还是向更

跟美国学生一起学英语: 高级版

深处游去。最后,就在它快要失去知觉的时候,: 于是它们把麝鼠放在大龟身上,把它的爪子 它伸出了一只小爪子,抓到了水底。它刚刚碰到 : 放在它的背上。直到今天,龟壳上还有麝鼠爪子 底,就向上浮去,那时它几乎已经死了。

以为它失败了。然后它们看见它的右爪紧紧攥: 整个世界。 在一起。

土放在哪儿呢?"

"放在我的背上吧。"一个深沉的声音说。那 : 草。地上的生命开始了。 是大龟, 它是从水下的深处上来的。

: 留下的痕迹。那一点儿泥土刚一落到龟背上,马 当其他动物看见它浮出水面的时候,它们: 上就开始变得越来越大,越来越大,直到变成了

然后那两只天鹅就带着天上的女人落到了地 "它拿到泥土了。"它们说,"现在我们能把 ::上。她踏上了新的土地,张开手,让手里的种子 掉到光秃秃的地面上,从那些种子里长出了树和

美文背景

关于人类起源的五大传说

1.犹太教和基督教共同的神话:亚当和夏娃

犹太教《旧约》和基督教《圣经》包含了两个神话起源故事,这两 个故事被现今的犹太教和基督教所认可并信仰。在第一个神话故事中,上 帝说:"让这儿出现光芒!"随后光就出现了,在6天的时间里,上帝创 造了天空、陆地、行星、太阳和月亮以及包括人类的所有动物。

在第二个神话故事中,上帝在地面上创造了第一个人类——亚当。上 帝为亚当创造了一个伊甸园让他无忧无虑地生活,但是禁止他吃伊甸园树 上结的果实,这些果实来自善良和邪恶意识之树。亚当的生活太寂寞孤单,



于是上帝从亚当身体上抽出一根肋骨,创造了第一个女人夏娃。一条会说话的大毒蛇诱惑说服夏 娃吃了禁果,之后夏娃又说服亚当也吃下了禁果。上帝发现此事后,驱除亚当和夏娃离开伊甸园, 让他们成为凡人。

2.印度神话:宇宙论与梵天

在最早的吠陀梵语的吠陀经中描述了古印度神话,无比巨大的神灵普鲁沙长着数千个头、眼睛和脚,他包裹着整个地面,他的10根手指延伸可以扩展空间。

当天神们向普鲁沙献出祭品时,普鲁沙身体上生成清澈的黄油,这些黄油 形成了鸟类和其他动物。后来普鲁沙的身体转变为世界万物的基础,以及形成 火神阿格尼、主管雷雨及战争的天神因陀罗等。同时,在他的身体上建立了印 度社会的四个等级:牧师、武士、平民和仆人。根据之后的历史发展,三位一 体的宇宙最高永恒实体梵天出现了,他是众生之父。此外,三位一体的天神还 包括守护之神毗瑟和破坏神施瓦。



梵天创造了宇宙万物,并持续了43.2亿年,之后破坏神施瓦摧残了宇宙秩序,并开启了新的循环,使每个人得到了舒缓,当前的宇宙循环状态还有数十亿年才能结束。

3.中国古代神话:盘古开天,女娲造人

宇宙之卵漂浮在永恒空间之中,它包括两个反作用力:阴和阳。经过无数次轮回,盘古诞生了,宇宙之卵中较重的部分——阴下落形成了地面,较轻的部分——阳上升形成了天空。

盘古担心天和地再次融合在一起,就用手脚支撑着天和地,他每天 长高 10 英尺,1.8 万年之后天空已有 3 万英里高,盘古的任务完成后就死



了,他的身体部分变成了宇宙的基本物质。女神女娲非常寂寞,她从黄河水中捞出泥巴来制作泥人, 这样人类出现了,随后她用树枝蘸上泥巴向地面上甩,无数个小泥点形成了人类。

4.远古埃及神灵:世界开始于混沌状态



在埃及古代神话中,最初世界是混沌无序的。天神阿图姆希望自己具有灵魂和肉体,之后他创造了一座小山,否则在这个混沌的世界里他没有立足之地。

阿图姆是一个没有性别的天神,他的眼睛能看到一切事情。他从嘴里吐出一个儿子舒——空气之神;然后又吐出了一个女儿泰芙努特——湿气女神。他们两个天神负责重新改变宇宙混沌状态的任务,舒和泰芙努特建立了土地之神盖布和天空之神努特。起初盖布和努特互相缠绕在一起,后来盖布将努特举了起来,新的世界秩序逐渐建立了起来,但是舒和泰芙努特消失在了黑暗之中。

阿图姆挖出了自己的眼睛用来寻找舒和泰芙努特,最后舒和特夫努特再次返回到阿图姆的身边, 阿图姆十分高兴,眼泪激动得流了下来,一滴滴眼泪落在地面上就形成了人类。

5.巴比伦神话: 魔力女神死后造就天与地



水神阿普苏和提亚玛特产卵生育了数代天神。这些晚辈天神中伊阿是 长兄,他的身边有许多个弟弟。这些年纪不大的小天神很吵闹,让阿普苏 和提亚玛特无法入睡,于是阿普苏密谋策划要杀死这些小天神。然而消息 不胫而走,埃亚抢先动手首先将阿普苏杀死。

提亚玛特得知噩耗后发誓要进行报仇,她创造了许多怪物,其中包括 疯狗、蝎人、半牛人和巨龙等。埃亚和女神达姆金娜创造了马尔杜克(长 着四个眼睛和四个耳朵),马尔杜克成为埃亚和达姆金娜的保护武神,在马 尔杜克和提亚玛特的恶战中,马尔杜克用一支箭射中了提亚玛特的心脏。

马尔杜克将提亚玛特的身体撕成两半,创建了天与地,之后马杜克创造了人类,让人类去做天神不愿做的苦力差事,如耕作和商业买卖等。

名言锦句

The man who has made up his mind to win will never say "Impossible".

---Napoleon

凡是决心取得胜利的人是从来不说"不可能"的。

----拿破仑

Answer

- I. 1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. A 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. A
- II. 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T
- III. 1. webbed 2. in 3. down 4. that 5. up



Part 5 Society 社会

美国接纳了来自全世界各地的移民,这些移民有着不同的文化背景、宗教信仰和价值观。正因如此,我们经常说美国是个"大熔炉"。然而,美国究竟是怎样的一个"大熔炉"?美国这个多种文化的"大熔炉"并不是没有倾向性的各种各样的文化、信仰和价值观"均匀"地融合在一起,美国的核心文化实际上并没有因为不同移民的到来而发生变化。当新移民踏上美国领土之后,他融入美国主流社会的过程实际上就是他不断承认美国核心文化并不断接受改造的过程。之所以说"改造",是因为这个成为"美国人"的变化过程并不完全是出于主动的、自发的。然而,随着新移民的不断增加,美国这个"大熔炉"的消化能力也开始出现问题。本章选取的文章将为读者更多地了解美国社会提供帮助。



30

Development of the English Language

英语的发展

在全球兴起英语热的当下,对于英语的起源和发展又有多少人了解呢?本篇文章将以单词为例,为你梳理英语发展的脉络,让你对英语发展的历史有一个清楚的认识。

You learn new words every day. When you hear a new word, do you ever think about the English language? How did the language get so many words? How did our language get so many different spellings? How did the English language get so many different sounds for the same spelling endings, such as *food*, *good*, and *blood*?

How can a language with an alphabet¹ of 26 letters have more than one million words? If you're wondering² about the answers to these questions, think about this fact. The 26 letters of our alphabet have 44 sounds, but those 44 sounds have 256 different spelling combinations!

Thousands of words in English are formed from old Greek and Latin roots³. The Greek root *graph*, meaning *writing* or *drawing*, has hundreds of English words stemming⁴ from

it. The Latin root, *audio*, meaning to *hear*, also has hundreds of English words stemming from it.

Greek and Latin do not account for all of the different words and spellings. The English language has "borrowed" words from many other languages. English "borrowed" such words as chocolate and banana from the Spanish; moccasin⁵ from the American Indian; chop suey from the Chinese word, *tzop-suey*; confetti⁶ from the Italian; and chauffeur⁷ from the French. These examples are only a very few of the "borrowed" words in the English language.

An unabridged⁸ dictionary is helpful for finding the source of words. The source will help you to understand why a sound may be spelled one way in one word and another way in a different word. As an example, the sh sound has fourteen different spellings. Two words with the sh sound are ship and sugar. The sh sound in sugar is spelled without the h. The sh sound in ship has the h.

The word *ship* came to the English originally from the German. They called it *schiff*. The Danish added the word to their language and pronounced⁹ it *skib*. The Icelandic language spelled it *skip*. The Dutch added the word to their language and spelled it schip. The word then came into the Anglo-Saxon language and was spelled first as *scyp* and later as *scip*. Modern English seems to have combined¹⁰ several of the spellings and pronunciations of other languages to arrive at the present word, *ship*.

The word *sugar* traveled halfway across the globe before it came to England. Sugar originally¹¹ was called *carkara* in India. The word moved west to Asia Minor and became *sakkar* in Arabia. *Sakkar* moved to southern Europe, to Spain, and became azucar. Moving north to France, the word became *sucre*. In Middle English the word became *sugre*.

Sugar, in modern English, seems to have combined the beginning letters of Middle English and French with the ending letters of Spanish, Arabic, and Indian.

You have been reading about language and the alphabet. *Alphabet* comes from the Greek words *alpha* and *beta*, the names of the first two letters in the Greek alphabet.

Language comes from the Latin word, *lingua*, which means tongue.

One reason why the English language has so many words is the frequent¹² use of compound¹³ words. Some compound words are combinations of words from two different languages. Today, many people use a computer or typewriter to print messages. The word *typewriter* is an example of a compound word. *Type* is originally from Greek and Latin words that came into the English language. *Writer* is from an old Anglo-Saxon word. Two words from different backgrounds have formed a compound modern English word, *typewriter*.

Many of the words used in church have come from different languages. The word church comes from an old Greek word that originally meant belonging to the Lord and later came to mean house of the Lord.

Cross came to the English language from the Latin word, *crux*.

Other words with Latin beginnings are pray, pastor¹⁴, religion, and sacred¹⁵. In the Latin forms, pray meant to beg, pastor meant the one who took care of a flock¹⁶ of sheep or shepherd¹⁷, religion meant something bound¹⁸ together, and sacred meant set apart.

Church words from the Greek are *Bible* and *bishop*. *Bible* comes from a Greek word that meant *books*, and *bishop* comes from a Greek word that meant *one who oversees*¹⁹.

The word worship came from Anglo-

Saxon and means to honor.

Do you think you would like to learn some of the history of the words? We have a word for this study. It comes from an old

Greek word that means the love of learning.

The English word is philology and it means the study of words. You will see this word again in the next section of this LIFEPAC.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. alphabet ['ælfəbet] n. 字母表
- 2. wonder ['wʌndə] v. 怀疑, 想知道
- **3. root** ['ruːt] n. 根;词根
- **4. stem** [stem] v. 以……为词干
- 5. moccasin ['mokəsɪn] n. 鹿皮鞋,硬底软 (拖)鞋
- **6. confetti** [kənˈfetɪ] *n*. (在婚礼或其他活动中抛撒的) 五彩纸屑
- **7. chauffeur** ['ʃ əʊfə] *n*. (雇佣的) 汽车司机
- 8. unabridged ['ʌnə'brɪdʒd] adj. 未删节
- 的,未省略的,完全的
- 9. pronounce [prəˈnaʊns] vt. 发出……的
- 音;注……的音
- 10. combine [kəmˈbaɪn] vt. 使……联合; 融合

- 11. originally [əˈrɪdʒnəlɪ] adv. 本来,原
- 来:最初
- **12. frequent** ['fri:kwənt] adj. 时常发生
- 的, 频繁的, 常见的
- 13. compound ['kompaund] n. 复合词
- 14. pastor ['pa:stə] n. 牧师
- **15. sacred** ['seɪkrɪd] *adj*. 神圣的, 上帝的, 宗教的
- 16. flock ['flok] n. 兽群; 鸟群
- 17. shepherd ['ʃepəd] n. 牧羊人
- **18. bind** [baɪnd] *vt.* 绑;约束(过去式、过去分词均为bound)
- **19. oversee** ['əʊvə'siː] vt. 俯瞰; 监督, 监视



Expression 词句荟萃

- **1. account** ([əˈkaʊnt]) **for sth.** 是……的说明(或原因);解释,说明
 - eg. The poor weather may have accounted for the small crowd.

天气不好可能是人来得少的原因。

How do you account for the movie's success?

你认为这部电影为何成功?

- 2. add...to 增加. 添加
 - eg. A new wing was added to the building.

这栋大楼新添了一座配楼。

I have nothing to add to my earlier statement.

我对我早前说的话没什么补充的。

- 3. arrive at sth. 得出, 达成, 做出
- **4. combine... with** (使)结合,组合;联合;混合
 - eg. Hydrogen combines with oxygen to form water.

氢与氢化合成水。

Combine the eggs with a little flour and heat the mixture gently.

把鸡蛋和少量面粉混合,用文火加热。

- **5.** set sth. apart 使……与众不同;留出,拨出(专用)
 - eg. Her clear and elegant writing sets her apart from other journalists.

她的文章清丽典雅, 比其他记者高出一筹。

The room was set apart for use as a library.

这个房间专门留出来作为图书馆。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Fill in the blanks with words from the list. Each sentence below has a word missing. If you are in doubt about the meaning of any word, look the word up in a dictionary.

banana chop suey moccasin chauffeur confetti sugar

- 1. The French word means a hired driver of an automobile.
- 2. The Italian word means tiny pieces of paper.

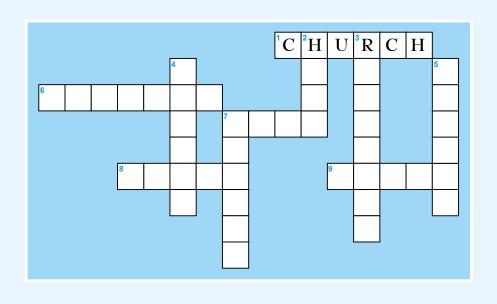
	3. The Indian word	is a	kind of footwear.	
	4. The word	original	ly came from India.	
	5. The Spanish word _	is a	fruit.	
	6. We get the word		from the Chinese.	
	II. Match the wor	d with its lan	guage.	
	1 schiff	a. Danish		
	2 skib	b. French		
	3 skip	c. German		
	4 schip	d. Dutch		
	5 scip	e. Anglo-Saxo	n	
	6 carkara	f. Arabian		
	7 sakkar	g. Icelandic		
	8 azucar	h. East Indian		
	9 sucre	i. Spanish		
	•	olumn to a w	d their meanings in the blanks. Add a word ord in the first column. The words	
	1	milk	ground	
	2			
	3	drug	shake	
	4	earth	quarters	
	5	head	store	
	6	speech	board	
	7	under	quake	
1	_			_

IV. Use the WORD BOX to find the right words. First, write the word that belongs on each line.

Then, put the word you wrote on the line by the same number in the puzzle. The first one has been done for you.

WORD BOX				
pastor	religion	church	bishop	pray
Bible	•	worship		

ACROSS	DOWN
1. The word church means belonging to the Lord.	2. The Spirit.
6. To honor is to	3 means bound together
7. The Latin word for meant to beg.	4. A is an overseer.
8 came from the Latin word crux.	5 means set apart.
9. The Greek word for meant books.	7. A feeds his flock.



参考译文

你每天都学习新的单词。当你听到一个新的单词时,有没有想过与英语这门语言相关的事情? 英语中这么多单词是怎么来的? 为什么会有这么多不同的拼写方式? 为什么很多词结尾的拼写相同,比如 food, good 和 blood, 它们的读音却不一样?

为什么一门只有 26 个字母的语言能有 100 多万个单词? 如果你在思考这些问题,请注意这一点:字母表中的 26 个字母可以构成 44 个音,而这 44 个音有 256 种不同的拼写组合方式!

英语中有成千上万个单词是以古希腊语和古拉丁语为词根的。比如希腊语词根 graph, 意为"写"或"画",就派生了几百个英语单词。拉丁语词根 audio,意为"听",也有几百个英语派生词。

希腊语和拉丁语的影响并不是英语词汇量 大、拼写多样的全部原因。英语还从其他许多 语言"借"词。例如,chocolate(巧克力)和 banana(香蕉)借自西班牙语,moccasin(鹿皮鞋) 来自美洲印第安语,chop suey(炒杂碎)来自汉语, confetti(五彩纸屑)来自意大利语,chauffer(私 人汽车司机)来自法语。这些仅仅是英语众多外 来词中的一小部分。

一本完整的大词典能帮助我们找到词的来源,而这能使我们了解同一个音为什么在不同的单词中有不同的拼写方式。例如,sh 这个音有 14 种拼法。ship 和 sugar 都带有这个音,但在 sugar 当中拼成 s,在 ship 当中则拼成 sh。

英语中的 ship 最初起源于德国,德国人将

其读作 schiff。schiff被引入多国语言,进入丹麦之后读音变为 skib,冰岛和荷兰则分别拼成 skip和 schip。之后该词进入盎格鲁 – 撒克逊语,起初拼成 scyp,后来改为 scip。现代英语似乎融合吸收了其他几种语言的拼法和读音而最后形成了现在的这个词,ship。

而 sugar 在到达英国之前已经在地球上走了半圈。sugar 起源于印度语的 carkara,该词向西传到小亚细亚,在阿拉伯变成 sakkar。sakkar 又传到欧洲南部,进入西班牙变成 azucar;向北传到法国则成为 sucre。到了中古英语,这个词写为 sugre。

现代英语的 sugar 像是把中古英语 sugre 以及法语 sucre 的开头字母和西班牙语 azucar、阿拉伯语 sakkar 以及印度语 carkara 的结尾部分结合起来而得到的。

你们已经读过跟语言 (language) 和字母表 (alphabet) 相关的内容了。alphabet 由希腊语字母 表的头两个字母 alpha 和 beta 构成。language 则来自拉丁语单词 lingua, 意为"舌头"。

频繁使用合成词是英语拥有大量词汇的原因之一。部分合成词由来自两个不同语言的单词构成。今天,很多人使用计算机 (computer) 或者打字机 (typewriter) 来打印信息。typewriter 就是一个合成词。type 是从希腊语和拉丁语传入英语的,而writer 则是个古老的盎格鲁 – 撒克逊语单词。两个来自不同背景的单词合并在一起构成了一个现代英语的合成词 typewriter。

church(教堂)来自古希腊语,最初意为"属于 上帝",后来又表示"上帝的房子"。

cross (十字架)是由拉丁语 crux 转变而来。

其他来自拉丁语的词还有 pray (祈祷), pastor(牧师), religion(宗教)和 sacred(神圣的)。 在拉丁语中,pray 意为"乞求、乞讨",pastor 指"看 管羊群的人或者说牧羊人", religion 指"绑在一 起", sacred 意为"使突出"。

源自希腊语的宗教词汇有 bible (圣经)和 !:

很多跟宗教有关的词汇都来自不同的语言。… bishop (主教)。bible 来自一个意为"书籍"的 希腊单词, bishop 的原词则指"监督者"。

> worship (崇拜,礼拜)来自盎格鲁一撒克 逊语,意为"尊敬"。

你想了解一下单词的有关历史吗? 对于这项 研究我们有话可说。它来源于一个古老的希腊单 词, 意思是"爱学习", 英语单词是"philology", 意思是"词汇学习"。你将在这本书的下一章再 次看到这个词。

"美"事一桩

美国小学(五年制)各年级教学目标

一年级:能够从1数到100,知道奇数和偶数,会简单的加减法;学会观察,对不同的事物和物 品分门别类;能例证生命的演变过程,了解自然界动植物之间互相依存的关系;学习使用图片和照片 来表达文字以外的意思;懂得衣、食、住之于一个家庭的必要性;明白家庭成员之间、邻里之间的关系。

二年级:会读、写三位数的数位,从随意抽取的五个数中,能够从小数到大或从大数到小;熟练 运用两位数的加减法,会用英寸或厘米等度量单位测量长度,看懂钟表上的时间;学会用图片和资料 来表达、理解不同职业的谋生方式;坚持写读书笔记或日记,学会写总结,懂得区别诗、散文、小说、 传记等不同的文学形式,了解虚构作品与非虚构作品之间的区别;开始学习独立研究动物,诸如昆虫 生态等问题。

三年级:学会如何把资料做成曲线图;会比较10万以内数字的大小及加法,熟练掌握三位数的 加、减、乘、除法;能够从周围的环境就地取材,搜集、组织材料,了解人如何保持健康,明白青蛙、 蝴蝶、小鸡、小白鼠等小动物的生命演变过程;懂得如何使用字典;能够明白自己所喜爱的作家、书 画家透过作品所表达的思想,能阅读和稍理解不同文化背景的文学作品。

四年级:用电脑运算很大的数位,比较 100 万以内的数字大小,学习小数和分数,画图表;能通 过地图、照片、图表来解释世界上各地区气候的不同;通过阅读,进一步了解不同的文学形式,比如 科幻作品、传记等。

五年级:会列、读各种表格,熟练分数的加、减、乘、除运算;能够利用图书馆的系统和资料进行研究;通过做笔记对各种资讯进行比较和综合;开始撰写非虚拟的报告和五段体式的短文;学会写正式、非正式以及朋友间的书信;懂得对不同类型的书籍进行分门别类,能掌握一本书的主要内容,并针对其构思、背景、人物塑造、表达方式、语言艺术等进行评论。

A Humor 休闲时刻



炮兵指挥官:自由开炮! 新兵:威尔在哪儿?

注释: "at will" 意为"自由地,随心所欲地",新兵却把 "Fire at will" 理解成向一个名叫"Will"的人开炮。

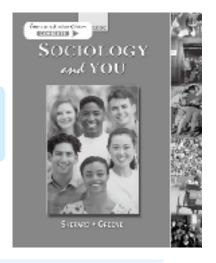
Answer

- I. 1. chauffeur 2. confetti 3. moccasin 4. sugar
 - 5. banana 6. chop suey
- $II. \ 1.\ c\ 2.\ a\ 3.\ g\ 4.\ d\ 5.\ e\ 6.\ h\ 7.\ f\ 8.\ i\ 9.\ b$
- III. 1. milkshake (奶昔) 2. cupboard (碗柜)
 - 3. drugstore (药房) 4. earthquake (地震)
 - 5. headquarters (总部)
 - 6. speechless (说不出话的)
 - 7. underground (地下的;地铁)
- IV. ACROSS 6. worship 7. pray 8. cross 9. bible
 DOWN 2. holy 3. religion 4. bishop 5. sacred
 7. pastor



Is the American 31 Dream Dying?

美国梦熄灭了吗?



美国人长久以来都梦想着比他们的父辈生活得更好。然而,20世纪80年代和90年代,就业、薪酬大幅缩水,由此引来的愤怒、疑惑和恐慌冲淡了先前的乐观情绪。

Americans have long expected to achieve a higher standard of living than their parents. Instead, according to Katherine Newman, social and economic changes are placing the American Dream in jeopardy¹. The downscaling² of jobs and pay that occurred during the 1980s and 1990s has replaced earlier optimism with anger, doubt, and fear.

Newman spent two years conducting personal interviews with 150 Americans living in "Pleasanton," a suburban³ community representative of much of America. Pleasanton is a mix of skilled blue-collar workers and white-collar professionals from a variety of ethnic⁴ and religious origins. Her respondents were schoolteachers, guidance⁵ counselors⁶, and sixty families whose children were then grown.

The residents of Pleasanton believed that the promise of America had taken an

unexpected wrong turn, and they were trying to make sense of it. Newman attempted to understand the residents' view of this downward mobility⁷. The stresses associated with changing economic conditions, she believed, would bring cultural expectations, disappointments, and conflicts close enough to the surface for a trained social scientist to see. As the study progressed, she did, in fact, see conflict between parents and grown children, disagreements along lines of race and ethnicity, and unhappy marriages. The following statement reveals a baby boomer's⁸ shattered⁹ confidence in the American Dream.

I'll never have what my parents had. I can't even dream of that. I'm living a lifestyle that's way lower than it was when I was growing up and it's depressing. You know it's a rude awakening when you're out in the world on your own.... I took what was given to me

and tried to use it the best way I could. Even if you are a hard worker and you never skipped a beat, you followed all the rules, did everything they told you were supposed to do, it's still horrendous¹⁰. They lied to me. You don't get where you were supposed to wind up. At the end of the road it isn't there. I worked all those years and then I didn't get to candy land. The prize wasn't there....

After a detailed and often personal exploration of what Newman calls the "withering11 American Dream," she turns to the larger social and political implications for society. She explores the transition¹² from a society of upward mobility based on effort and merit to a society in which social classes of birth increasingly dictate¹³ future social and economic positions. According to Newman, the soul of America is at stake. She raises these questions: Will Americans turn to exclusive self-interest, or will they care for others as well as themselves? Will suburbanites 14 turn a blind eye to the rapidly deteriorating¹⁵ inner cities? Will the generational, racial, and ethnic groups turn inward, or will they attempt to bridge the divides that threaten to separate them further?

A partial answer to these questions is

reflected in public opinion about federal, state, and local tax revenues16. If the residents of Pleasanton are any guide, Americans do not wish to invest in the common good. Public schools, colleges, universities, and inner cities, for example, are receiving a rapidly declining share of public economic support. In conclusion, Newman states: This does not augur¹⁷ well for the soul of the country in the twenty-first century. Every great nation draws its strength from a social contract, an unspoken agreement to provide for one another, to reach across the narrow self-interests of generations, ethnic groups, races, classes, and genders toward some vision of the common good. Taxes and budgets—the mundane¹⁸ preoccupations¹⁹ of city hall—express this commitment, or lack of it, in the bluntest20 fashion. Through these mechanistic²¹ devices, we are forced to confront some of the most searching philosophical questions that face any country: What do we owe one another as members of a society? Can we sustain²² a collective sense of purpose in the face of the declining fortunes that are tearing us apart, leaving those who are able to scramble²³ for advantage and those who are not to suffer out of sight?



式 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. jeopardy ['dʒepədɪ] n. 危险
- 2. downscale ['daunskeɪl] v. 缩减……规模
- 3. suburban [səˈbɜːbən] adj. 郊外的, 偏远的
- **4. ethnic** ['eθnɪk] adj. 人种的,种族的,异教徒的
- 5. guidance ['gaɪdəns] n. 指导, 领导
- 6. counselor [ˈkaʊnsələ] n. 顾问,法律顾问
- 7. mobility [məuˈbɪlɪtɪ] n. 活动性, 灵活性, 迁移率, 机动性
- 8. boomer ['bu:mə] n. 赶往新兴地区安家的人
- **9. shatter** ['[ætə] vt. 打碎, 使散开, 粉碎, 破坏
- 10. horrendous [hp'rendəs] adj. 可怕的
- **11. withering** ['wɪðərɪη] adj. 使干枯的, 摧毁的, 进行干燥处理的
- **12. transition** [trænˈzɪʒən, -ˈsɪʃən] n. 转变, 转换, 跃迁, 过渡, 变调
- 13. dictate [dɪk'teɪt] v. 口述, 口授, 使听写, 指令, 指示, 命令
- 14. suburbanite [səˈbɜːbənaɪt] n. 郊区居民
- 15. deteriorate [dɪˈtɪərɪəreɪt] v. (使)恶化
- **16. revenue** ['revənjʊː] n. 收入, 国家的收入, 税收
- **17. augur** ['**ɔ**:ɡ**ə**] *n*. (古罗马用观察飞鸟行动等方法预卜未来的)占兆官,占卜师,预言者 ν. 占卜,预言
- **18. mundane** ['mʌndeɪn] *adj*. 世界的, 世俗的, 平凡的
- 19. preoccupation [pri(!),ɒkjʊˈpeɪ∫ən] n. 当务之急
- **20.** blunt [blʌnt] *adj*. 钝的,生硬的
- **21. mechanistic** [ˌmekəˈnɪstɪk] *adj*. 机械论学说的, 机械论的
- 22. sustain [səs'teɪn] vt. 支撑,撑住,维持,持续
- 23. scramble ['skræmbl] vi. 攀缘,杂乱蔓延,争夺



Expression 词句荟萃

1. wind up 结束

e.g. It's time for him to wind up his speech.

现在是他结束演说的时候了。

He wound up by declaring that his efforts would be continued.

他最后宣称他的努力将继续下去。

2. at stake 得失攸关;处于危险境地

e.g. His reputation itself was at stake.

他面临身败名裂的危险。

My whole future was at stake.

我的未来吉凶未卜。

3. scramble (for) 争取;争夺

e.g. The players scrambled for /to get possession of the ball.

球员们抢球。

The children scrambled for the coins that were thrown to them.

孩子们争夺扔给他们的硬币。

4. out of sight 看不见

e.g. We are not yet out of sight of land.

我们仍可看见陆地。

Out of sight, out of mind.

眼不见,心不烦。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Choose the correct answer.

1. Social and economic changes are placing the American Dream in

A. jeanery

B. jealousy

C. jeopardy

2. The	of jobs and pay occurred during the 1980s and 1990s.				
	B. downsizing				
		promise of America had taken an unexpected			
wrong		1			
A. wind	B. turn	C. wing			
		er cities, for example, are receiving a rapidly			
	are of public economic sup				
	B. declaring				
		of much of America.			
	B. preventative				
		,			
II. Write true (T)	or false (F).				
· · ·	N. C.	chers, guidance counselors, and fifty families			
whose children were	•	, ,			
		g economic conditions would bring cultural			
	ointments, and conflicts.	C			
3 According to Newman, the soul of America is at stake.					
III. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words given.					
		clusive threat deteriorate			
		lf-interest, or will they care for others as well			
		blind eye to the rapidly 3			
		groups turn inward, or will they			
		to separate them further?			
-					
owe co	nfront mechanistic scram	ble sustain philosophy decline			
		we are forced to 8 some of the			
	most searching 9 questions that face any country: What do we 10				
one another as member	ers of a society? Can we 1	1 a collective sense of purpose in			
		re tearing us apart, leaving those who are able			
	to 13 for advantage and those who are not to suffer out of sight?				
	\sim \sim				

得更好。然而,凯瑟琳·纽曼却表示,社会经济 的变化正在一步步熄灭着这个美国梦。20世纪 80 年代和 90 年代, 就业、薪酬大幅缩水, 由此 引来的愤怒、疑惑和恐慌冲淡了先前的乐观情绪。

纽曼花了两年时间,对居住在普莱森顿—— 一个能代表大部分美国人生活状态的郊区社 区——的 150 名美国人进行了私人访谈。普莱森 顿是一个混居地,这里不仅有蓝领技工,还有专 业白领,他们有着不同的道德观和宗教信仰。在 她的被访谈者中有学校教师、咨询师和60个孩 子已经长大成人的家庭。

普莱森顿的居民认为,美国梦已经转向了一 个人们并不期望的错误方向,而且他们也在试着 探究其中的原因。纽曼设法努力去理解人们这种 认为社会在向下发展的趋势。她认为, 伴随变化 的经济条件所带来的压力会产生寄托在文化上的 期望、失望和足够引起社会学家重视的冲突。随 着研究的进行,事实上她也确实看到了父母和已 经长大成人的孩子之间在对种族、道德和不幸婚 姻这些问题上的冲突、不和。下面的这段话可以 揭示一位青年对美国之梦的心灰意冷。

"我将永远不会拥有我的爸妈已经拥有的一 切。我甚至不敢去想这些。我现在的生活水平比 小时候要低,这很郁闷。你明白当你不再拥有你 的世界时,那是多么的恶心……我拿走了给予我 的东西,并力所能及地把它们用到最好。但即使 你工作努力,从不翘班,遵守所有的规章制度,

美国人长久以来都梦想着比他们的父辈生活 : 他们骗了我。你并没有到达你应该到达的地方。 路的尽头一无所有。这些年我一直都在工作,可 我却始终没能到达那个'成功的彼岸'。根本什 么得都不到……"

> 在对纽曼称之为"遭人鄙夷的美国梦"进行 详尽并且通常是个人的探究之后, 她将视野转向 了更多的社会和政治内涵。她研究了一个社会的 变迁,这个社会从建立在努力和成绩的向上发展 到出生时的社会等级越来越能决定将来的社会地 位。纽曼表示,美国人的灵魂正面临着危机。她 这样发问:美国人会变成严重排斥他人、只关心 自我利益的人?还是会变成关爱他人如同关爱自 己的人? 那些生活在郊区的人会对日渐恶化的中 心城市保持缄默吗? 各个年龄段、种族和道德信 仰的群体会越来越封闭吗?还是他们会在这些逐 渐割裂他们的分歧上构建沟通的桥梁呢?

对这些问题的回答有一些已经在公众对待联 邦政府、州政府和当地税收的态度上有所体现。 如果普莱森顿的居民可以称为向导的话, 可以看 出美国人已经不愿意再去投资公益事业。例如公 立中小学、学院、大学和中心城市接受的社会经 济援助正在大幅减少。总而言之, 纽曼认为, 这 对一个21世纪国家的灵魂来说不是一个吉兆。 每一个伟大的民族都能从一个社会契约中汲取力 量,这个社会契约是一种大家都有为他人付出的 约定俗成、超越狭隘的以年龄段、种族、道德、 等级和针对一些特定公益事业的性别为界限的 自我利益。税收和预算——市政府平常的当务之 做完他们让你做的一切,结果还是不尽如人意。: 急——恰巧显示了这种契约,或者说是以最生硬 的方式缺失了这种契约。通过这些机械的机制, 我们被迫正视一些所有国家都在面临的尖锐而深 刻的哲学问题:我们怎么才能将别人归为社会成 员?在面对财富的减少,而这些财富正将我们割 裂,并留下一些争名夺利者和哗众取宠者,我们 能否使整个社会都保持同样的心态?



I. 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A

II. 1. F 2. T 3. T

III. 1. exclusive 2. suburbanites 3. deteriorating

4. ethnic 5. bridge 6. threaten 7. mechanistic

8. confront 9. philosophical 10. owe

11. sustain 12. declining 13. scramble

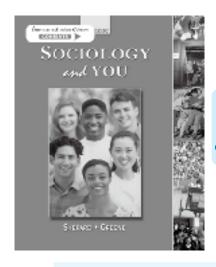


"美"事一桩

美国梦

所谓的美国梦(American Dream),是一种相信只要在美国经过努力不懈的奋斗便能获得更好生活的理想,即人们必须通过自己的勤奋工作、勇气、创意和决心迈向繁荣,而非依赖于特定的社会阶级和他人的援助。它通常代表了人们在经济上的成功或是企业家精神。许多欧洲移民都是抱着美国梦前往美国的。尽管有些人批评美国梦过度强调了物质财富在衡量胜利和快乐上扮演的角色,但许多美国人的确认为,这种获得成功的机会在世界上其他国家是根本不存在的。因为与其他大多数国家不同的是,在美国人们拥有的经济自由相当多,政府扮演的角色相当有限,这使得美国的社会流动性极大,任何人都有可能通过自己的努力迈向巅峰。从美国独立直至19世纪末期,广大的土地都无人居住或拥有,任何有心人都可以进行投资并开垦。而到了工业革命时期,美国庞大的自然资源和先进的工业技术则使得快速的社会流动变得可能,而且这种趋势仍在一天一天地壮大中。

依据历史学家的说法,美国快速的经济发展和工业扩张并非只是因为美国的自然资源丰富,更是因为所有人都有机会借由自己的奋斗获取财富。美国梦成为吸引世界各地人民移民美国的主要原因——无论过去或现在。如今,每年有超过 100 万的人成为美国公民,美国是世界上最受欢迎的移民国家。



Basic Values in the United States

美国人的基本价值观

美国是许多不同群体共同的家园,整个国家没有一套普遍适用的价值观。尽管如此,社会学家罗宾:威廉姆斯还是发现了指导大部分美国人日常生活的重要价值观。

The United States is home to many different groups. No single set of values is likely to hold across the entire country. Despite this problem, sociologist Robin Williams identified important values that guide the daily lives of most people in the U.S. A partial list includes:

Achievement and success. People emphasize achievement, especially in the world of work. Success is supposed to be based on effort and competition and is viewed as a reward for performance. Wealth is viewed as a symbol of success and personal worth.

Activity and work. People tend to prefer action over inaction² in almost every case. For most Americans, continuous and regular work is a goal in itself. Promotion should be for merit³ rather than favoritism⁴. Finally, all citizens should have the opportunity to perform at their best.

Efficiency and practicality⁵. People pride themselves on getting things done by the most rational⁶ means. We search for better (faster) ways of doing things, praise good workmanship⁷, and judge performance by the results. We love to rely on science and technology.

Equality. From the very beginning of our history as a nation, we have declared a belief in equality for all citizens. As minority groups and women achieved citizenship, our concept of equality grew. We tend to treat one another as equals, defend everyone's legal rights, and favor equal opportunity—if not equal results—for everyone.

Democracy. People emphasize that all citizens are entitled to equal rights and equal opportunity under the law. In a democracy, the people elect their government officials. Power is not in the hands of an elite⁸ few.

Group superiority⁹. Despite their concern for equality of opportunity, people in the U.S. tend to

place a greater value on people of their own race, ethnic¹⁰ group, social class, or religious group.

These values are clearly interrelated¹¹. Achievement and success affect and are affected by efficiency and practicality, for example. But we can also see conflicts among some values. For instance, people in the U.S. value group superiority while at the same time stressing equality and democracy.

Do these values still prevail¹² in the United States today? Williams identified these major values approximately thirty years ago—about the time many of your parents were teenagers. Although these values have remained remarkably¹³ stable over the years, some have changed. Today there is less emphasis on group superiority in America than in the past. This can be seen in the decline¹⁴ of openly racist attitudes and behaviors. In reality, however, it is usually norms¹⁵ and behavior rather than underlying values that change radically¹⁶. It is probably because of the passage of civil rights laws that many Americans are now less likely to make overt¹⁷ racist statements. Racism¹⁸ (group superiority) remains part of the fabric¹⁹ of American culture.

The norms related to hard work and activity have also changed in recent years. Many Americans now work as hard at their leisure activities (for example, long-distance running and mountain climbing) as they do at their jobs.

Although Williams's analysis of major American values remains basically sound today, some sociologists believe that his list is incomplete. They would add, for example, optimism²⁰, honesty, and friendliness to the list of major values in the United States.











🥄 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

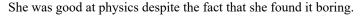
- 1. partial ['pɑ:[əl] adj. 部分的,局部的,偏袒的,偏爱的
- **2. inaction** [ɪnˈæk[ən] *n*. 无行动,不活动,无为,怠惰,迟钝
- **3. merit** ['merɪt] *n*. 优点, 价值 *v*. 有益于
- 4. favoritism ['feɪvərɪtɪzəm] n. 偏爱, 得宠, 偏袒
- **5. practicality** [præktɪ kælɪtɪ] n. 实用性
- 6. rational [ˈræ[ənl] adj. 理性的, 合理的, 推理的
- 7. workmanship ['ws:kmən[ɪp] n. 手艺, 技艺, 做工, 技巧
- **8.** elite [eɪˈliːt] *n*. <法>[集合名词]精华,精锐,中坚分子
- 9. superiority [sju,pɪərɪˈɒrətɪ] n. 优越, 高傲
- **10.** ethnic ['e θ nɪk] *adj*. 人种的,种族的,异教徒的
- 11. interrelate [ˌɪntə(ː)rɪˈleɪt] v. (使)相互关联
- 12. prevail [prɪˈveɪl] vi. 流行,盛行,获胜,成功
- 13. remarkably [rɪˈmɑːkəb(ə)lɪ] adv. 非常,显著地,引人注目地
- **14.** decline [dɪˈklaɪn]n. 下倾, 下降, 下垂, 斜面, 斜坡, 衰败, 衰落
- **15. norm** [no:m] *n*. 标准, 规范
- **16. radically** [rædɪkəlɪ] adv. 根本上,以激进的方式
- **17. overt** ['əʊvəːt] *adj*. 明显的, 公然的
- **18. racism** ['reɪsɪzəm] n. 种族主义, 人种偏见, 种族歧视
- 19. fabric [ˈfæbrɪk] n. 结构, 建筑物, 构造
- **20. optimism** ['pptɪmɪzəm] n. 乐观,乐观主义



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. despite sth./yourself 即使;尽管(自己)不愿意
 - e.g. Her voice was shaking despite all her efforts to control it.

尽管她竭尽全力控制自己,声音仍然在颤抖。



尽管她认为物理枯燥无味,她却学得很好。

He had to laugh despite himself.

他不想笑,但还是忍不住笑了出来。

2. at one's best 在最出色的状态下; (演员)达到个人最高水平; (花等)在盛开期 e.g. I don't really feel at my best today.

我今天不太舒服。

The garden is at its best this month, looking the most beautiful.

本月那花园看起来最漂亮(百花盛开时期)。

He was at his best yesterday evening and kept us all amused, talking in his most amusing way.

他昨天晚上表现出了最佳的谈吐,使我们大家一直都很开心。

3. pride oneself on 引以为荣; 为……而骄傲

e.g. She had always prided herself on her appearance.

她总是对自己的外貌感到得意。

He prides himself upon his skill as a pianist.

他对于自己作为一名钢琴家的钢琴技艺感到很得意。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Choose the co	orrect answer.	
1. No single set of	values is likely to ho	ld the entire country.
A. on	B. over	C. across
2. Sociologist Robi	in Williams	important values that guide the daily lives of
most people in the	ne U.S.	
A. concluded	B. identified	C. included
3. People pride then	mselves ge	tting things done by the most rational means.
A. on	B. over	C. in

4. People emphasiz under the law.	e that all citizens are	to equal rights and equal opportunity			
	B. entitled	C. entailed			
5. People in the U.	S. tend to place a greater	value on people of their own race,			
group, social class	s, or religious group.				
A. racial	B. minority	C. ethnic			
6. In reality, it is u radically.	sually norms and behavio	r rather than values that change			
A. underlying	B. underplaying	C. underpaying			
II. Write true (Γ) or false (F).	(
1 Wealth is v	viewed as a symbol of succ	ess and personal worth.			
2 As minoring grew.	ty groups and women achi	eved citizenship, American's concept of equality			
_	n the hands of an elite few.				
		p superiority in America than in the past.			
5 Racism (gr	5. Racism (group superiority) remains part of the fabric of American culture.				
6 The norms related to hard work and activity have also changed in recent years.					
III. Complete th	ne sentences with the	correct form of the words given.			
	regular merit favo	ritism perform action			
People tend to p	refer action over 1	in almost every case. For most Americans,			
continuous and 2	work is a goal	in itself. Promotion should be for 3			
rather than 4	Finally, all citizens	should have the opportunity to 5 at			
their best.					
Ī	practical superior inter	relate conflict democracy			
		. Achievement and success affect and are affected			
	-	nple. But we can also see 8 among			
some values. For in	stance, people in the U.S. v	alue group 9 while at the same			
time stressing equal	ity and 10				
	~ -				

参考译文

美国是许多不同群体共同的家园, 整个国家 : 握在少数精英人十手中。 没有一套普遍适用的价值观。尽管如此,社会学 家罗宾:威廉姆斯还是发现了指导大部分美国人 日常生活的重要价值观。这里是列表的一部分, 包括:

成就和成功。人们强调成就,特别是在工作 领域。成功建立在努力和竞争的基础上, 并作为 绩效的奖励。财富被视为成功和个人价值的象征。

活动和工作。在几乎所有情况下,人们偏向 干采取行动而非无动干衷。对干大多数美国人来 说,持续而有规律的工作本身就是一个目标。提 升是因为成绩而不是偏袒。最终, 所有人应该有 机会做出最好的表现。

效率和实用性。让人们引以自豪的是用最合 理的方法把事情做好。我们寻求更好(更快)的 工作方式,推崇精湛的技术,根据结果判断表现。 我们乐意依仗科学技术。

平等。从我们作为一个国家的历史开始,我 们就宣布所有公民一律平等的信念。随着少数民 族和妇女群体取得公民身份,我们平等的信念渐 入人心。我们倾向于平等地对待每个人, 尊重每 个人的合法权益, 倡导人人拥有平等的机会—— 但不是每个人都拥有平等的结果。

民主。人们强调,在法律之下所有公民都有 权享有平等的权利和均等的机会。在一个民主国 家中,人民选出自己的政府官员。权力并不是掌 : 到美国主要价值观的列表中。

集团优势。尽管美国人对机会平等很关注, : 但他们倾向干最大化和自己拥有相同种族、民族、 社会阶层或宗教的人群的价值。

这些价值观显然相互关联。例如,成就和成 功在影响效率和实用性的同时也受其影响。但我 们也看到在一些价值观间的冲突。例如,美国人 在发扬集团优势的同时强调平等和民主。

这些价值观至今仍在美国盛行吗? 威廉姆 斯指出, 这些重要的价值观大约在30年前盛行, 那时你们的父母中很多还是青少年。虽然这些价 值观多年来维持稳定,但有些已经改变。如今, 美国对干集团优势的强调较过去有所减弱。从公 开宣扬种族主义的态度和行为呈下降之趋势中可 以看出这一点。但在实际中,通常是规范和行为, 而不是基本价值观的彻底转变。这可能是因为有 关公民权利的法律通过之后,许多美国人不太可 能公开做出种族主义言论。种族主义(集团优势) 仍然是美国文化结构的一部分。

关干努力工作和活动的标准近几年也发生了 改变。现在许多美国人在其休闲活动时(例如长 跑和登山)也像在工作时一样努力。

虽然威廉姆斯对干美国主要价值观的分析基 本正确, 但今天的一些社会学家认为他的列表并 不完整。例如,他们想把乐观、诚实和友善增加

"美"事一桩

美国电影中的文化

美国人有着强烈的自我中心观念,信奉个人主义,并把追求个人幸福看作一种社会的共识。因此,美国电影中极力宣扬以自我为中心的个人主义和英雄主义。这是好莱坞电影长盛不衰的重要秘诀,也是美国电影蕴藏各种文化价值观的根源。

美国电影中的英雄人物无论面对何种危机、困难,无论受到何种致命的打击、毁灭性的创伤,从来都不相信失败,因而也没有任何胆怯心理,英雄们总是临危不惧,一往无前。从 20 世纪 30 年代的《大篷车》《铁骑》《壮志千秋》开始,到 1939 年的《关山飞渡》,都是好莱坞电影中牛仔英雄片的标志性作品,1952 年的《正午》、1953 年的《原野奇侠》、1959 年的《赤胆屠龙》、1960 年的《七侠荡寇志》等西部片,仍旧讲述传奇般的个人英雄故事,并逐步表现



出极端个人英雄主义倾向。比如,由史泰龙主演的《第一滴血》系列影片,塑造了特种兵兰博这个典型的个人英雄主义形象。除此之外,在美国科幻电影中,一般都有一个全能的超级英雄:《黑客帝国》中的尼奥天生就具备常人所不及的敏捷和睿智,关键时刻总能化险为夷。越是科幻电影,英雄主义越容易展现——《独立日》里无处不在的"美国万岁"情结,《星球大战》里一个个俊朗魁伟的绝地武士,《骇客帝国》那位漂亮的救世主,以及《终结者》系列、《异形》系列塑造的两位女强人,都不难看出英雄崇拜在科幻片里的垄断地位。

美国电影中打造的个人英雄主义形象有着共同特征,那就是将个人英雄无限神化,从而表现出极

Answer

I. 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. A

II. 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T 6. T

III. 1. inaction 2. regular 3. merit 4. favoritism

5. perform 6. interrelated 7. practicality

8. conflicts 9. superiority 10. democracy

端个人英雄主义的价值取向。美国电影中广泛制造完美英雄个体的虚幻假象,尤其是极力渲染英雄个体控制整个矛盾冲突的巨大力量,极力夸大英雄个体力量战胜群体敌对势力的决定性作用,将个体力量无限夸大、神化,从而赋予了这些英雄人物以极端个人英雄主义的价值取向。

Choosing to Be Alcohol Free

SOCIOLOGY ASHAC YOU SIEWE + Greek

远离酒精

对于很多人来说,他们都很熟悉这样的情景:充满活力的年轻人在做运动、做饭,过着无比充实的生活。这个吸引人的广告的目的在于推销一种"毒品"——酒精。

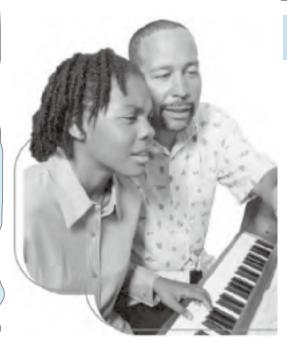
For many people the image is a familiar one: energetic young adults playing sports, cooking out, living life to the fullest. The purpose of this attractive advertisement scene¹ is to promote and sell a drug—alcohol—that is addictive², physically damaging, and often an entry into the use of other drugs. In reality, alcohol is a lethal³ drug with harmful effects that include physical, mental/emotional, social, and legal consequences, including serious health problems to the drinker and those around him



or her, and even death caused by disease, violence, and motor vehicle accidents.

The Facts about Alcohol

Alcohol, or more accurately, ethanol⁴—the type of alcohol in alcoholic beverages⁵—is a powerful and addictive drug. Ethanol can be produced synthetically⁶ and naturally through the fermentation⁷ of fruits, vegetables, and grains. Fermentation is the chemical action of yeast⁸ on sugars. Water, flavoring⁹, and minerals are mixed with ethanol to produce a variety of beverages, such as beer and wine. Alcohol also can be processed to create spirits, or liquors¹⁰, such as whiskey, rye, and vodka.



Immediate Effects of Alcohol Consumption

At first drinking alcohol may provide a kind of energy "rush¹¹." This initial reaction masks alcohol's true effects as a depressant¹², a drug that slows the central nervous system. Alcohol quickly affects a person's motor skills by slowing reaction time and impairing¹³ vision. Clear thinking and good judgment also diminish. A variety of factors, including a person's body size and stomach contents, determines alcohol's effect. For this reason, the amount of alcohol that leads to intoxication¹⁴ varies from person to person. Intoxication is

the state in which the body is poisoned by alcohol or another substance and the person's physical and mental control is significantly reduced.

Factors That Influence Alcohol Use

Despite the many problems associated with alcohol use, many teenagers still choose to drink. Why? Several reasons influence teens in their choice to use—or not use—alcohol:

- ▶ Peer¹⁵ pressure. It's normal for teens to want to feel accepted within a group. The desire to fit in is strong. Teens who choose friends who avoid alcohol use are more likely to be alcohol free than teens whose friends accept alcohol use.
- ▶ Family. Family members can help teens be alcohol free. Parents who discourage and avoid the use of alcohol are more likely to have teens who do the same. In fact, teens cite parental disapproval as the number one reason for not using alcohol.
- ▶ Media messages. Many media messages on TV and radio and in movies make alcohol use appear exciting, attractive, and fun. Many of these messages feature elements targeted at a teen audience, such as young, attractive people engaging in problem-free drinking in a party like atmosphere. The message of many ads is "To fit in, drink alcohol." However, teens who recognize these messages and their meanings are more likely to resist negative influences.



式 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1. scene** [siːn] *n*. 现场,场面,情景,景色,发生地点
- 2. addictive [əˈdɪktɪv] adj. 上瘾的
- **3. lethal** ['li:θəl] *adj*. 致命的 *n*. 致死因子
- **4. ethanol** ['eθənɒl, -nəʊl] *n*. 乙醇, 酒精
- 5. beverage ['bevərɪdʒ] n. 饮料
- **6. synthetically** [sɪn'θetɪkəlɪ] *adv.* 综合地, 合成地
- 7. fermentation [.fa:men'teɪ[ən] n. 发酵
- 8. yeast [ji:st] n. 酵母,发酵粉
- 9. flavoring [ˈfleɪvərɪη] n. 调味品,调味料
- **10. liquor** [ˈlɪkə] *n*. 液体, 汁, 酒精饮料, [药]溶液
- **11. rush** [rʌ[] n. 匆促,紧急,急流,灯芯草
- **12.** depressant [dɪˈpresənt] adj. 有镇静作用的 n. 镇静剂
- 13. impair [ɪmˈpeə] v. 削弱
- 14. intoxication [ɪnˌtɒksɪˈkeɪ[ən] n. 陶醉
- **15. peer** [pɪə] *n*. 同等的人,贵族



Expression 词句荟萃



e.g. He's never done this type of work before; I'm not sure how he'll fit in with the other people.

他过去从未做过这种工作,很难说他是否会与其他人配合得好。

Do these plans fit in with your arrangements?

这些计划和你的安排冲突吗?



2. cite ... as 提及(原因), 举出(事例)

e.g. He cited his heavy workload as the reason for his breakdown.

他说繁重的工作负荷是导致他累垮的原因。

His name has been cited as a future MP.

有人提到他, 认为他将来可以当国会议员。

3. target (at) 把……作为攻击目标; 把……作为批评的对象

e.g. The missiles were mainly targeted at the United States.

导弹主要瞄准的是美国。

The company has been targeted by animal rights groups for its use of dogs in drugs trials. 这家公司因用狗做药物试验而成为动物保护团体批评的对象。

4. engage in 使从事,参加

e.g. Even in prison, he continued to engage in criminal activities.

他甚至在监狱里还继续从事犯罪活动。

She tried desperately to engage him in conversation.

她用尽办法去跟他谈话。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Choose the co	I. Choose the correct answer.				
1. In reality, alcohol	is a	_ drug with harmful effects.			
A. legal	B. lethal	C. lentil			
2. Alcohol also can	be processed to	create, or liquors, such as whiskey, rye, and			
vodka.					
A. spirits	B. sprites	C. springs			
3. Teens	_ parental disapp	roval as the number one reason for not using alcohol.			
A. cues	B. cost	C. cite			

4. The message of mar	ny ads is "To	, drink alcohol."	
A. fit in	B. fit up	C. fit with	
5. Alcohol quickly	affects a perso	on's motor skills by slowing	reaction time and
	vision.		
A. imprinting	B. impairing	C. impearling	
II. Write true (T)	or false (F).		
1 Ethanol can b	e produced synthe	etically and naturally through the	fermentation of fruits,
vegetables, and grain	ins.		
2 Fermentation	is the chemical act	tion of yeast on salts.	
3 Water, flavoring	ng, and minerals a	re mixed with ethanol to produce	a variety of beverages,
such as beer and wir	ne.		
4 Intoxication is	s a drug that slows	the central nervous system.	
5 Depressant is	the state in which	the body is poisoned by alcohol.	
6 The amount o	f alcohol that leads	s to intoxication varies from perso	on to person.
III. Complete the	sentences with	h the words given.	
: e	nergetic attractive	image addictive damaging ent	ry.
For many people	the 1	is a familiar one: 2	young adults
playing sports, cooking	ng out, living life	to the fullest. The purpose of the	nis 3
advertisement scene is	s to promote and s	sell a drug—alcohol—that is 4	, physically
5, and oft	en an 6	into the use of other drugs.	
:	1 1 1 1	sequences harmful vehicle v	
In reality, alcohol	is a 7	drug with 8	_ effects that include
physical, mental/9	, sc	ocial, and legal 10	, including serious
health problems to the	e drinker and those	e around him or her, and even de	ath caused by disease,
11,	and motor 12	accidents.	
	~		

参考译文

对于很多人来说,他们都很熟悉这样的情景:充满活力的年轻人在做运动、做饭、过着无比充实的生活。这个吸引人的广告的目的是推销一种毒品——酒精——它容易使人上瘾,对人体有害,并且往往是人们开始使用其他毒品的起点。事实上,酒精是一种致命的毒品。它对我们的危害包括身体上的、心理/情绪上的、社交上的以及法律后果。它们包括酗酒者和他们身边的人的严重的健康问题,甚至是由疾病、暴力和机动车事故所引起的死亡。

有关酒精的一些事实

酒精,或者更准确地说,乙醇——酒精饮料中的酒精种类——是一种强效的并且容易上瘾的毒品。乙醇可以通过水果、蔬菜、谷物发酵物的合成或者其自然的发酵而产生。发酵是一种酵母和糖的化学反应。人们将水、调料和矿物质与乙醇混合,从而生产出了各种各样的饮料,如啤酒和葡萄酒。人们还可以通过对酒精的加工制造烈酒或酒精饮料,如威士忌、黑麦威士忌和伏特加。

酒精消费直接的影响

第一次饮酒可能会给你带来一种能量"高峰"。这种最初的反应掩盖了酒精作为一种抑制剂,一种延缓中枢神经反应的毒品的事实。酒精可以通过减缓反应时间和损坏视觉来迅速影响一个人的控制能力,清晰的思维和良好的判断能力

对于很多人来说,他们都很熟悉这样的情景: 也会被削减。酒精对一个人的影响由很多因素决活力的年轻人在做运动、做饭、过着无比充 定,包括这个人的体型和其胃里所储存的东西。 生活。这个吸引人的广告的目的是推销一种 因此,导致酒精中毒的饮酒量因人而异。酒精一一酒精——它容易使人上瘾,对人体有害, 毒是指:人体被酒精或者另一种物质毒害,并且 往往是人们开始使用其他毒品的起点。事实 其对机体和心理控制能力明显降低。

影响洒精使用的因素

尽管很多问题的产生与饮酒有关,许多青少年还是会选择喝酒。为什么?有很多原因影响着青少年们对饮酒或者不饮酒的选择。

同龄人的压力 作为青少年,希望自己能被一个群体所接受是很正常的。他们想融合到群体中去的愿望是强烈的。那些选择了不饮酒的人做朋友的青少年,比那些有着接受饮酒的朋友的人更可能会远离酒精。

家庭 家庭成员可以帮助青少年远离酒精。 那些不鼓励并且避免饮酒的家长,其孩子很可能 会和他们一样远离酒精。事实上,"家长不赞成" 是青少年们举出的不饮酒的首要原因。

媒体信息 许多电视、广播和电影里的媒体信息把饮酒刻画成了一种刺激的、有诱惑力的并且有趣的行为。这些信息中的许多特性是针对青少年观众的。比如年轻的有吸引力的人们在一个类似派对的场合毫无顾忌地饮酒。很多广告的信息是"想合群,就得喝酒"。但是,那些看懂这些信息及其含义的青少年,很可能会抵制这些负面的影响。

"美"事一桩



酒后驾车在美国

美国国家公路交通安全管理局 2008 年报告,美国交通事故死亡人数连续 8 年减少,2008 年更降至 1994 年以来的最低点。美国运输部部长彼得斯认为,这主要归功于执法严格。

作为"车轮上的国家",美国在防止交通事故方面确实积累了不少经验,其中尤其以汽车保费的调节最为重要。美国全国联网的事故记录体系和完善的保费计价制度,把开车安全和每个人的经济利益紧密联系起来。夫妻俩共开一辆记录良好的车,每年只需花不到 500 美元的汽车保费。而一个有轻微违章记录的单身汉,每年很可能要为擦伤他人车辆等小事故支付几千美元保费。

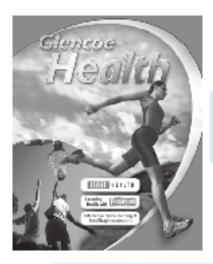
另一重要经验是严惩酒后驾驶。除当场吊销执照和入狱一年,对造成生命伤害的酒后驾驶员可以以二级谋杀罪起诉,最高可适用死刑。近年来判定酒后开车的血液酒精浓度标准更是日趋严格,从 0.08% 降到 0.05%,由于年轻人酒后开车的比例较高,针对 21 岁以下的驾驶者,只要血液酒精浓度达到 0.01% 就算酒后开车。严厉的交通执法甚至让美国人聚会时都很少喝烈酒。



Answer

- I. 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B
- II. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F 6. T
- III. 1. image 2. energetic 3. attractive 4. addictive
 - 5. damaging 6. entry 7. lethal 8. harmful
 - 9. emotional 10. consequences 11. violence
 - 12. vehicle





34

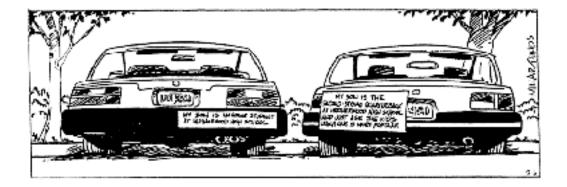
Sports and Social Mobility

体育与社会流动

体育明星往往在自传中指出,体育是自己摆脱贫困的方式。专业体育运动员的平均工资确实相当高。即便如此,让我们来看看体育和社会流动之间所谓的联系。

The autobiographies¹ of star athletes often point to sport as their way out of poverty². One educator once predicted that "football would enable a whole generation of young men in the coal fields of Pennsylvania to turn their backs on the mines that employed their fathers". Many athletes do use sport as a means out of their equivalent³ "coal fields," and many minority⁴ members work their way out of poverty through sport. It is also true that the average salaries of professionals are very high. Even so, let's examine this alleged⁵ relationship between sport and social mobility.

Does sport really promote social mobility? Participating in sport increases the likelihood of improving a person's place in the stratification⁶ structure. Whatever sport they play, college athletes tend to be better educated, earn more money, and have higher occupational⁷ prestige⁸ than their fathers.



This is the very definition of upward social mobility. And in these terms, college athletes as a whole are more successful than college students who do not participate in sports. Although

this finding is meaningful, it has not settled the debate regarding how much sport promotes upward mobility for minorities.

Does sport promote upward mobility for minorities? Some people argue that sport is a social class escalator for minorities. They point to Michael Jordan, Deion Sanders, and Sammy Sosa, among others. A different viewpoint argues that the emphasis on sport is harmful because it diverts attention away from learning the academic and business-related skills necessary for success in mainstream American society.

Because of the lure9 of high salaries and prestige,

many aspiring¹⁰ minority athletes fail to develop alternative career plans. Minority members who spend their youth sharpening their athletic skills at the expense of their general education will very likely be casualties¹¹ of an unrealizable dream of wealth and glory¹².

Some convincing evidence supports those who see sport as a barrier to upward mobility for minorities. It is said that there are over one million high school football players. Just under 60,000 of these players become college football players. And 1,600 of these college players become professional players. Thus, the probability that a high school football player will make it to the pros is less than two-tenths of one percent. Similarly, a high school baseball player has a 0.2 percent chance of becoming a major leaguer¹³. The odds¹⁴ are even worse for a high school basketball player, who has a 0.1 percent probability of making it to the National Basketball Association. Moreover, those who become professional athletes have short careers on the average: one to seven years for baseball players, four to six years for basketball players, and four and one-half years for football players.

Of course, this does not mean minority athletes should not enjoy the benefits of a collegiate¹⁵ sport. To be sure, some athletes have received good college educations who may otherwise not have had the chance. It does argue, however, that no high school athlete—minority or white, for that matter—should rely solely¹⁶ on sport as a ticket up the stratification structure.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. autobiography [ˌɔːtəʊbaɪˈɒgrəfɪ] n. 自传
- 2. poverty ['povətɪ] n. 贫穷, 贫困, 贫乏, 缺少
- 3. equivalent [ɪˈkwɪvələnt] adj. 相等的,相当的,同意义的 n. 等价物,相等物
- **4. minority** [maɪˈnɒrɪtɪ, mɪ-] *n*. 少数, 少数民族
- 5. alleged [əˈledʒd] adj. 声称的,所谓的
- **6. stratification** [.strætɪfɪˈkeɪ[ən] *n*. 层化,成层,阶层的形成
- 7. occupational [ˌɒkjʊˈpeɪ[ənəl] adj. 职业的, 占领的
- 8. prestige [pres'ti:ʒ, -'ti:dʒ] n. 声望, 威望, 威信
- 9. lure [ljʊə] v. / n. 引诱
- **10. aspiring** [əsˈpaɪərɪη] *adj*. 热心的,积极的,有抱负的
- 11. casualty ['kæʒjʊəltɪ] n. 伤亡
- **12. glory** ['glo:rɪ] n. 荣誉, 光荣
- **13.** leaguer ['li:gə] n. (联盟、联合会等的)盟员,会员,成员,围攻
- 14. odd [pd] adj. 余下的
- 15. collegiate [kəˈliːdʒɪət] adj. 学院的
- **16. solely** ['səʊ(l)lɪ] adv. 独自地,单独地



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. turn one's back on 掉头不理睬某人: 避开某人
 - e.g. He always turn his back on his mom.

他总是躲着他妈妈。

He turned his back on his girlfriend when he went abroad.

他出国后就背弃了自己的女朋友。

- **2. divert** (**from**) 改道; 娱乐; 使转变注意力
 - e.g. The farmers diverted water from a river into the fields.

农民们将河水导入田间。

How can we divert her thoughts from her sad loss?

我们如何使她不再想她的可悲的悲痛?

3. at the expense of 牺牲;以……作代价

e.g. He became a brilliant scholar, but only at the expense of his health.

他成为一个卓越的学者, 但却牺牲了健康。

She completed the work at the expense of her personality integrity.

她以自己的尊严为代价完成了工作。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Choose the correct answer.					
1. Let's examine this	relationship l	petween sport and social mobility.			
A. alleged	B. supposed	C claimed			
2. College athletes ter	nd to be better educated, ea	arn more money, and have higher occupational			
than	their fathers.				
A. privilege	B. prestige	C. priority			
3. The are ev	ven worse for a high school	basketball player.			
A. odds	B. odes	C. orders			
4. Minority athletes sl	nould enjoy the benefits of	a sport.			
A. collective	B. collegiate	C. collected			
5. No high school ath	lete-minority or white-s	should rely solely on sport as a up			
the stratification str	ucture.				
A. lable	B. pass	C. ticket			
II. Write true (T) or false (F).					
1 The autobiographies of star athletes often point to sport as their way out of poverty.					
2 College ath	letes as a whole are more	successful than college students who do not			
participate in sports					

跟美国学生一起学英语:高级版

3 The emphasis on sport is harmful because it diverts attention away from learning the				
academic and business-related skills.				
4 The probability that a high school football play	er will make it to the pros is less than			
one percent.				
5 Those who become professional athletes have lo	ong careers on the average.			
III. Complete the sentences with correct form	of the words given.			
P				
mobility escalator poverty aspire likel	ly alternative stratify			
Many minority members work their way out of	through sport.			
2. Participating in sport increases the	of improving a person's place in the			
structure.	(
3. How much does sport promote upward	for minorities?			
4. Sport is a social class for minorities.				
5. Because of the lure of high salaries and prestige, many	minority athletes fail to			

参考译文

体育明星往往在自传中指出,体育是自己摆 : 声望。 脱贫困的方式。一位教育家曾经预测,足球将能 使宾夕法尼亚煤田整整一代的年轻人离开他们父 : 条件下,大学运动员整体而言比不参加体育运 亲工作过的煤田。许多运动员把体育作为他们离 开所在"煤田"的方式,许多少数民族成员通过 体育摆脱贫困。专业体育运动员的平均工资确实 相当高。即便如此,让我们来看看体育和社会流 动之间所谓的联系。

体育真的能促进社会流动吗?参与体育运动 增加了一个人提升社会层次的可能性。无论从事 哪项体育运动,大学运动员往往受到更好的教育, 赚取更多的钱,并获得比他们父亲更高的职业 : 学生对学术知识和商业技能的注意力,而这些知

这是典型的社会向上流动的定义。在这样的 动的大学生更成功。虽然这个发现很有意义,但 : 是它并没有从根本上解决关于体育运动对促进少 : 数民族向社会上层流动有多大作用的争论。

体育是否能促进少数民族成员向社会上层流 动?有些人认为对少数民族群体来说,体育是社 : 会阶层的自动扶梯,他们以迈克尔·乔丹,迪昂·桑 德斯和萨米·索萨等为例。另一种不同的观点认 为,强调体育的重要性是有害的,因为它分散了

少的。在高工资和高声望的诱惑下,许多有抱负 的少数民族运动员放弃了发展其他事业的计划。 在青年时期以失去系统教育为代价来完善体育技 能的少数民族成员,很可能成为财富和荣耀之梦 破灭的受难者。

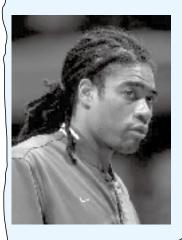
那些把体育看作是少数民族成员向上流动障 碍的人找到了一些令人信服的证据。目前高中足 球运动员超过100万。其中不足6万人成为大学 足球运动员,而大学运动员中仅1600人成为职 业球员。因此, 高中足球运动员成为职业球员的 概率低于0.2%。同样地,高中棒球选手入选大

识和技能对于在美国主流社会取得成功是必不可 : 联盟的机会是0.2%。更糟糕的是高中篮球运动员, 他们只有 0.1% 的可能性进入美国职业篮球协会。 此外, 专业运动员的平均职业寿命都很短:棒球 选手 1~7 年, 篮球运动员 4~6 年, 足球运动员 4.5 年。

> 当然,这并不意味着少数运动员不应享有大 学体育所带来的益处。可以肯定的是,一些运动 员接受过良好的大学教育, 否则他们不可能有进 一步发展的机会。然而, 无论是少数民族还是白 种人,没有一个高中运动员能完全依靠体育获得 提升社会层次的通行证。

名人链接

萨米·索萨(Sammy Sosa)



萨米·索萨是前美国职棒大联盟选手,主要担任外场手。1998年, 索萨建立了萨米·索萨基金会,致力于帮助贫困儿童。索萨穿的21 号球衣,来自他少年时的英雄罗伯托·克莱门特。

索萨(萨穆埃尔·佩拉尔塔·索萨)(Samuel Peralta Sosa)于 1968年11月12日生于多米尼亚共和国的圣佩得罗德。他是棒球史 上最令人激动的本垒打击球员之一。1998年, 当时芝加哥小熊队的 外场手索萨及当时圣路易斯红雀队的第一守垒员马可:迈克格维尔, 打破了1961年创造的一个赛季本垒打61次的纪录。索萨打了66个 本垒打,马可·迈克格维尔打了70个本垒打。次年,索萨打了63 个本垒打。他的大联盟生涯开始于 1989 年的德州游骑兵队,之后陆

续在芝加哥白袜队、芝加哥小熊队和巴尔的摩金莺队打球。1998年6月,他创造了大联盟单月本垒 打 20 个的记录。同年,他被授予"国家联盟最有价值选手"的称号。在 2003 年赛季,由于在一次比

跟美国学生一起学英语:高级版

赛中非法使用软木球棒,索萨被中止参加 7 场比赛。2005 年赛季前,索萨被交换至巴尔的摩金莺队。2005 年结束,他累积了生涯 588 支本垒打,暂居生涯本垒打第 4 名。2006 年,他没有参加大联盟棒球比赛。2006 年休息一年后,索萨和游骑兵队签约并在 2007 年回到大联盟,担任该队的指定打击。2007 年 6 月 20 日对小熊队的比赛,击出生涯第 600 支本垒打,成为史上第 5 位达成此记录的球员。



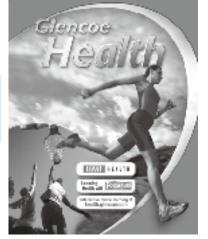
Answer

- I. 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C
- II. 1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F
- III. 1. poverty 2. likelihood; stratification
 - 3. mobility 4. escalator 5. aspiring; alternative



Building Healthy Relationships

35



建立良好的人际关系

要想建立成功的人际关系,运用一些可以促进积极发展的技巧是非常重要的。要想实现这点,人们需要一些技巧,其中包括沟通、合作和妥协——良好人际关系三技巧。

For a relationship to succeed, it is important to implement¹ skills which develop positive relationships. For that to happen, the people involved need certain skills. Three of these skills are communication, cooperation, and compromise²—the three Cs of healthy relationships.



Communication

Communication refers to your ways of sending and receiving messages. These messages may be exchanged in words or through gestures³, facial expressions, and behaviors. You communicate to let others know your feelings, thoughts, and expectations. Communication also lets you discover the feelings, needs, wants, and knowledge of others.

Cooperation

Have you ever helped someone move a heavy object, such as a large piece of furniture? Such activities are almost impossible without cooperation, working together for the good of all. Working together through cooperation helps build strong relationships. For example, Susan helps prepare dinner each evening because her parents don't get home from work until 6 p.m. Because of her help, Susan's family is able to eat together and enjoy one another's company. Her contribution benefits the entire family.

Compromise

Three friends can't agree on how they'll spend the afternoon: Thomas and Elise want to go biking, but Serena wants to play miniature⁴ golf. Have you ever been in a similar situation? If so, you probably used compromise to solve the problem. Compromise is a problem-solving method that involves each participant's giving up something to reach a solution that satisfies everyone. It can be used to create a win-win situation for everyone involved. The "give and take" of effective compromise strengthens relationships. By your willingness to give up something in order to reach a solution, you practice socially acceptable ways of resolving⁵ interpersonal conflict by practicing non-abusive⁶ behavior. Remember, however, that compromise involves seeking a solution that is acceptable to all persons involved. Therefore, it should not lead to a decision that goes against your values or beliefs. Learning when—and when not—to compromise is a vital⁷ relationship skill.

Characteristics of Healthy Relationships

By practicing the three Cs, you make positive contributions to healthy relationships. In addition, all good relationships—whether with family members, friends, or other members of your community—have certain recognizable characteristics. Some of these characteristics are described below.

- ► Mutual⁸ Respect and Consideration. In healthy relationships, people show mutual respect even when they disagree. This involves accepting one another's tastes and opinions and being tolerant⁹ of different viewpoints. Furthermore, each person shows consideration by being thoughtful about the rights and feelings of others.
- ► Honesty. Because of their mutual respect and consideration, participants in a healthy relationship have the confidence to be open and honest about their actions, thoughts, and feelings. Dishonesty can seriously weaken or even destroy a relationship.
- ▶ Dependability¹⁰. Participants in a healthy relationship are dependable. They are trustworthy¹¹ and reliable. Each is there for the others when needed.
- ► Commitment¹². Healthy relationships require commitment. The participants are willing to work together and make sacrifices¹³ that benefit everyone involved. They are loyal¹⁴ to each other, and they are committed to strengthening the relationship.



🧾 Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- **1.implement** ['implimant] vt. 贯彻,实现 v. 执行
- **2.compromise** ['komprəmaɪz] *n*. 妥协,折中 *v*. 妥协,折中,危及……的安全
- **3.gesture** ['dʒest[ə] n. 姿态,手势,表示 v. 打手势,以手势表示
- **4.miniature** ['mɪnɪət[ə] n. 缩小的模型,缩图,缩影 adj. 微型的,缩小的
- 5.resolve [rɪˈzɒlv] vt. 解决
- **6.abusive** [ə'bju:sɪv] adj. 辱骂的, 滥用的
- 7. vital ['vaɪtl] adj. 生死攸关的,重大的,生命的,生机的,至关重要的,所必需的
- 8.mutual ['mjuːtjʊəl, 'mjuːtʃʊəl] adj. 相互的, 共有的
- 9.tolerant ['tolərənt] adj. 容忍的, 宽恕的, 有耐药力的
- 10.dependability [de.pendə'bɪlɪtɪ] n. 可信任, 可靠性
- **11.trustworthy** ['trʌstˌwɜːðɪ] adj. 可信赖的
- **12.commitment** [kəˈmɪtmənt] n. 委托事项,许诺,承担义务
- **13.sacrifice** ['sækrɪfaɪs] n. 牺牲, 献身, 祭品, 供奉 v. 牺牲, 献出, 献祭, 供奉
- **14.loyal** [ˈlɒɪəl] *adj*. 忠诚的,忠心的



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. refer to 提到; 谈起; 说起; 涉及; 描述; 参考
 - e.g. The victims were not referred to by name.
 - 没有提到受害人的姓名。
 - She always referred to Ben as "that nice man".
 - 她总是称本为"那个大好人"。
 - The star refers to items which are intended for the advanced learners.
 - 标有星号的项目是给高阶学习者的。
 - You may refer to your notes if you want.
 - 如果需要,可以查阅笔记。



2. for the good of 为……的好处; 益处

e.g. Cuts have been made for the good of the company.

实行裁减是为了公司的利益。

I'm only telling you this for your own good.

我把这事告诉你只是为你好。

What's the good of earning all that money if you don't have time to enjoy it?

要是没时间去享受,赚这么多钱有什么用?

3. commit sb./yourself to sth./doing sth. 承诺;保证;(公开地)表示意见

e.g. The president is committed to reforming health care.

总统承诺要改革卫生保健制度。

Borrowers should think carefully before committing themselves to taking out a loan.

借款人应当慎重考虑之后再行借贷。

You don't have to commit yourself now, just think about it.

你不必现在表态,只需考虑一下这件事。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Choose the correct answer.					
1. For a relationship	1. For a relationship to succeed, it is important to skills which develop				
positive relationship	ps.				
A. supplement	B. implement	C. imply			
2. Communication	to your ways o	f sending and receiving n	nessages.		
A. refers	B. infers	C. resolves			
3. All good relationsh	nips—whether with fami	ly members, friends, or	other members of your		
community—have	certain	_ characteristics.			
A. recognizing	B. recognized	C. recognizable	(
4. In healthy relations	hips, people show	respect even when	they disagree.		
A. mutual	B. bilateral	C. manual	(

5. Participants in a healthy relat	ionship are	to strengthening the relationship.				
A. commuted	B. commented	C. committed				
II. Write true (T) or false	e (F).					
1 The three Cs of healthy	y relationships are comn	nunication, cooperation, and compromise.				
2 Working together thro	ugh cooperation helps b	ouild strong relationships.				
3 Compromise lead to a	decision that goes again	nst your values or beliefs.				
4 Learning when—and w	when not—to comprom	ise is a vital relationship skill.				
5 Participants in a health	5 Participants in a healthy relationship are undependable.					
III. Complete the sentence	ces with the correct	t form of the words given.				
abusive resolv	e participate win-win	compromise strengthen				
1 is a problem	n-solving method that	involves each 2giving up				
something to reach a solution th	at satisfies everyone. It	can be used to create a 3				
situation for everyone involved.	situation for everyone involved. The "give and take" of effective compromise 4					
relationships. By your willingness to give up something in order to reach a solution, you						
practice socially acceptable w	vays of 5	interpersonal conflict by practicing				
6 behavior.						

促进积极发展的技巧是非常重要的。要想实现这 : 情和行为来传递的。沟通的目的是为了让别人了 点,人们需要一些技巧,其中包括沟通、合作和:解你的感受、想法和期望。沟通当然也会让你去 妥协——良好人际关系三技巧。

要想建立成功的人际关系,运用一些可以 : 息可能是通过语言,也可能是通过手势、面部表 发现别人的感受、需求和见闻。

沟通

沟通是指你发送和接收信息的方式。这些信 : 你曾经帮助过别人搬大件家具之类的重东

合作

西么?这类行为如果没有合作基本是不可能实现的,这种合作是指大家齐心协力、创造属于所有人的利益。通过合作可以帮助建立起强有力的人际关系。例如,苏珊的父母每天下午都要工作到6点才能回家,所以她一直在帮家里准备晚餐。正是由于她的付出,一家人才能够享受坐在一起吃饭、相互陪伴的天伦之乐。她的奉献使全家人受益。

妥协

三个朋友在一起,永远也商量不出下午要去 干什么。托马斯和埃莉斯想去骑车,但塞雷娜却 想玩迷你高尔夫游戏。你遇到过相似的情形么? 如果遇到过,可能你就需要以妥协来解决这个问 题了。妥协是一个解决问题的方法,它需要每个 人都放弃一些东西来达成一个所有人基本满意的 解决方案。这为每个当事人都开创了一个双赢的 局面。有效妥协的"舍而后得"加强了人际关系。 由于你愿意为了解决问题而放弃一些东西,你就 通过不伤害别人的行为将人与人之间的问题以一 种社会可以接受的方式解决了。但是要记住,妥 协需要找到一种所有当事人都能接受的解决方法。 因此,这种方法的确定是不能与你的价值观和信 仰相违背的。学会什么时候应该妥协以及什么时

: 候不应该妥协是一个很关键的人际关系技巧。

良好人际关系的特征

通过运用这三个良好人际关系技巧,你已经 为建立良好的人际关系做了很多积极的工作。此 外,所有良好的人际关系——无论是与你的家人、 朋友还是社区成员——都有一些特定的可识别的 特征。下面就描述一下其中的一些特征。

相互尊重与体谅 在良好的人际关系中,人们即使是彼此意见相左时仍然可以表现出相互之间的尊重。这需要去接受别人的品位和想法,接纳不同的意见。另外,每个人都要顾及他人的权利与感受,体谅他人。

诚实 由于相互的尊重与体谅,一个良好人际关系中的所有参与者都有信心坦诚相待,对自己的行动、想法和感受开诚布公。虚伪会严重削弱甚至摧毁一个健康的人际关系。

可靠 一个良好人际关系中的所有参与者都 是可以信赖的。他们值得信任,放心可靠。哪里 需要,他们就会出现在哪里。

承诺 良好的人际关系需要承诺。人们愿意 齐心协力,同舟共济。他们彼此忠诚,承诺会让 这段关系更加牢固。

Answer

- I. 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C
- II. 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F
- III. 1. Compromise 2. participant's 3. win-win4. strengthens 5. resolving 6. non-abusive



"美"事一桩



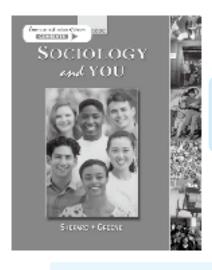
马斯洛

马斯洛(Abraham H.Maslow,1908—1970), 犹太裔美国心理学家, 智商高达 194 的天才, 第三代心理学的开创者, 伟大的先知。主要著作是《动机与人格》《存在心理学探索》《人性能达的境界》等。

马斯洛提出来的心理健康的 10 条标准如下:

- (1) 有充分的自我安全感;
- (2)能充分了解自己,并能恰当估价自己的能力;
- (3) 生活理想切合实际;
- (4) 不脱离周围现实环境;
- (5) 能保持人格的完整与和谐;
- (6)善于从经验中学习;
- (7) 能保持良好的人际关系;
- (8) 能适度地宣泄情绪和控制情绪;
- (9) 在符合团体要求的前提下,能有限度地发挥个性;
- (10)在不违背社会规范的前提下,能适当地满足个人的基本需求。





36

Cultural Diversity¹ 文化多样性

文化多样性存在于所有社会之中。有些多样性归因于社会类别,即群体共享的社会特征。某些行为与特定的年龄、性别或宗教相联系。

Cultural diversity exists in all societies. Some diversity is a result of social categories²—groups that share a social characteristic such as age, gender, or religion. Certain behaviors are associated with particular ages, genders, or religions. For example, devout³ Catholics⁴ are expected to attend Mass⁵ regularly.

What are subcultures⁶ and countercultures⁷?

Cultural diversity also comes from groups that differ in particular ways from the larger culture. These groups participate in the larger culture. They may speak the language, work regular jobs, eat and dress like most others, and attend recognized houses of worship⁸. But despite sharing in the broader culture, these groups have some ways of thinking, feeling, and behaving that set them apart. Such groups—known as subcultures and countercultures—are usually found in large, complex⁹ societies.



Subculture is part of the dominant¹⁰ culture but differs from it in some important respects. The subculture of San Francisco's Chinatown is a good example. Early Chinese immigrants brought much of their native culture with them to America and have attempted¹¹ to retain¹² it by passing it from generation to generation. Although Chinese residents of Chinatown have been greatly affected

by American culture, they have kept many cultural patterns of their own, such as language, diet, and family structure.

Counterculture is a subculture deliberately¹³ and consciously opposed to certain central beliefs or attitudes of the dominant culture. A counterculture can be understood only within the context of this opposition¹⁴. Examples of primarily teenage countercultures include the "goth" and the "punk" scenes. Goth is a shortening of the term Gothic¹⁵, meaning dark, strangely mysterious, and remote. Punk is a philosophy of rebellion and sexual revolution popularized by the lyrics¹⁶ and music of punk-rock bands.

Ethnocentrism¹⁷

Once people learn their culture, they tend to become strongly committed to it. In fact, they often cannot imagine any other way of life. They may judge others in terms of their own cultural standards—a practice referred to as ethnocentrism.



Vocabulary 新鲜酷词

- 1. diversity [daɪ'vɜːsɪtɪ] n. 差异,多样性
- 2. category [ˈkætɪgərɪ] n. 种类,别,[逻]范畴
- 3. devout [dɪˈvaʊt] adj. 虔敬的, 诚恳的
- **4. catholic** [ˈkæθəlɪk] *n*. 天主教徒 *adj*. 天主教的
- 5. Mass [mæs] n. 弥撒:罗马天主教教堂和一些新教教堂举行的领取圣餐的公共庆祝活动
- **6. subculture** ['s Λ b_ik Λ lt[ə] n. 亚文化群: 在一个社会或一种文化内具有其独特性的一群人
- **7. counterculture** ['kauntəˌkʌltʃə] *n*. 反传统(主流)文化(20世纪60和70年代在美国青少年中盛行的一种思潮)
- **8. worship** ['wɜː[ɪp] n. 崇拜,礼拜,尊敬
- 9. complex ['kompleks] adj. 复杂的, 合成的, 综合的 n. 联合体
- **10. dominant** ['dominant] *adj*. 有统治权的,占优势的,支配的
- **11. attempt** [əˈtempt] n. 努力, 尝试, 企图 vt. 尝试, 企图
- 12. retain [rɪˈteɪn] vt. 保持, 保留

- 13. deliberately [dɪˈlɪbərətlɪ] adv. 故意地
- **14. opposition** [,**ɔpə**'zɪ[ən] *n*. 反对, 敌对, 相反, 反对派, [天文学]冲, [逻辑学]对当法
- **15.** Gothic ['go θ ɪk] n. 哥特式 adj. 哥特式的,野蛮的
- **16.** lyric ['lɪrɪk] *n*. 抒情诗, 歌词 *adj*. (供)吟唱的, 抒情的
- 17. ethnocentrism [ˌeθnəʊˈsentrɪzəm] n. 民族优越感



Expression 词句荟萃

- 1. set apart (from/for sb./sth.) 使与众不同; 使突出; 留出; 拨出(专用)
 - e.g. Her elegant style sets her apart from other journalists.

她的典雅风格使她与其他记者截然不同。

Two rooms were set apart for use as libraries.

留出两个房间作为图书室。

- 2. attempt to do sth. (at sth./ doing sth.)(on sb./sb.'s life) 企图; 试图; 尝试; 杀 人企图
 - e.g. Two factories were closed in an attempt to cut costs.

为削减费用,关闭了两家工厂。

The couple made an unsuccessful attempt at a compromise.

这对夫妇试图和解但未成功。

Someone has made an attempt on the President's life.

有人企图刺杀总统。

- 3. opposed (to) 强烈反对; 截然不同
 - e.g. She remained bitterly opposed to the idea of moving abroad.

她仍然强烈反对移居国外。

Our views are diametrically opposed on this issue.

在这个问题上,我们的观点截然不同。



Exercise 牛刀小试

I. Choose the correct answer.			
1 Catholics are expected to attend Mass regularly.			
A. Devout	B. Devoted	C. Dedicated	
2 sharing in the broader culture, some groups have some ways of thinking,			
feeling, and behavir	ng that set them apart.		
A. In spite	B. Despite	C. Although	
3. A counterculture can be understood only within the context of this			
A. deposition	B. supposition	C. opposition	,
4. Examples of teenage countercultures include the "goth" and the "punk"			
scenes.			
A. primarily	B. preliminarily	C. essentially	
5. Once people learn their culture, they tend to become strongly to it.			
A. commaned	B. committed	C. commented	
II. Write true (T) or false (F).			
1Cultural diversity exists in all societies.			
2Counterculture is part of the dominant culture but differs from it in some important			
respects.			
3Subculture is a subculture deliberately and consciously opposed to certain central			
beliefs or attitudes of the dominant culture.			
4Goth is a shortening of the term gothic, meaning dark, strangely mysterious, and			
remote.			
5A practice that people judge others in terms of their own cultural standards is referred			
to as ethnocentrism.			
	\sim		

III. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words given.

culture immigrant pattern attempt retain native affect Early Chinese 1 brought much of their 2 culture with them to America and have 3 to 4 it by passing it from generation to generation. Although Chinese residents of Chinatown have been greatly 5 by American culture, they have kept many cultural 6 of their own, such as language, diet, and family structure. Other examples of 7 are those formed by circus people, musicians, and mental patients.

参考译文

文化多样性存在于所有社会之中。有些多样 : 个很好的例子。早期的华人移民带着他们祖国的 性归因于社会类别,即群体共享的社会特征,如 : 年龄,性别或宗教。某些行为与特定的年龄、性 别或宗教相联系。例如,虔诚的天主教徒会定期 参加弥撒。

什么是亚文化和反主流文化?

文化多样性也来自于以特别的方式不同于主 流文化的群体。这些群体参与主流文化。他们可 能说英语,从事普通的工作,像大多数其他人那 样吃饭和穿着,并出入公认的宗教场所。但是, 尽管有广泛的文化共享,这些群体某些方面的思 想、感觉和行为使他们与众不同。这些群体作为 亚文化和反主流文化而闻名,它们经常在大型、 复杂的群体被发现。

亚文化是主流文化的一部分,但在一些重要 方面与之有所不同。旧金山唐人街的亚文化是一 : 他文化,这种行为被称为民族优越感。

许多文化来到美国,并代代相传。虽然唐人街的 中国居民已经深受美国文化的影响, 但是他们留 有自己的许多文化形态,如语言、饮食和家庭结构。

反主流文化是一种刻意反对某些中心信仰或 主流文化态度的亚文化。反主流文化只有在这种 对立的背景下才能被理解。早期青少年反主流文 化的主要例子包括 "goth"和 "punk"流派。goth 是 gothic 的缩写,它意味着黑暗、怪异和遥远。 punk 是一种反叛和性革命的哲学,通过朋克,摇 滚乐队的歌词和音乐广为流传。

民族优越感

一旦人们了解了自己的文化, 他们往往会坚 决拥护它。事实上,他们常常不能想象其他任何 的生活方式。他们会根据自己的文化标准评价其

"美"事一桩

\bigcirc

美国语言

在美国这块移民之地上,一直居住着来自不同国籍、说不同语言的人们。1990年的人口普查显示,几乎14%的美国人在家里不讲英语,而只有3%的人宣称他们英语"说得不好"或"根本不会说"。这表示超过1%的美国人可掌握双语。此外,许多中学生、大学生甚至小学生在校的学科都必须加修一门外语。除了西班牙语、德语与法语等常选的第二语言外,愈来愈多的学生选修东欧和亚洲语言。虽然并非所有学生都能够学以致用,但仍有愈来愈多的美国人已经开始意识到会说多种语言的好处。

在主要大城市里,有不同族群聚居的社区,那里都还保存着移民的文化传统和语言。有些当地人在生活上只讲母语就够了,根本不需要学英语。佛罗里达州南部以及美国西南部等区,有许多说西班牙语的社区。事实上,在美国,说西班牙语的人是美国最大的非英语系族群。此外,还有中国、越南、意大利、波兰及其他很多种族的族群,他们各自使用着自己的语言,使美国语言更加多样化。在许多外来民族的聚居区里,由于外语的广泛使用,人们仿佛到了"国中国"。

虽然有些美国人欢迎这种语言与文化多元化,但也有些人担心英语已经受到威胁。从 20 世纪 80 年代以来,"英语唯一"(English Only)运动即试着开始推动立法,将英语定为官方语言,并限制其他语言的使用。但有些团体,如"对说其他语言人的英语教学组织"(简称 TESOL),就反对这种语言限制主义。他们提倡"英语与外语"(English Plus),建议美国人应尊重其他族群的母语以及文化,同时也推广英语教学,帮助其他族群融入社会主流。但是到目前为止,已有 19 个州通过了"英语唯一"这一立法,该议题也一直是辩论的焦点。



Answer

- I. 1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B
- II. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
- III. 1. immigrants 2. native 3. attempted 4. retain5. affected 6. patterns 7. subcultures

